英语语法手册。

蒋冰 赵德鑫等编

商务印书馆

英语语法手册

修订本

A HANDBOOK OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Revised Edition

薄冰 赵德鑫 等编

商 务 印 书 馆 1978 年 北京

英语语法手册

(修 订 本)

薄冰 赵德鑫 等编

商 务 印 书 馆 出 版 (北京王府井大街 36 号) 新华书店北京发行所发行 上海 商务 印刷厂 印刷

787×1092 毫米 1/32 131½ 印张 295 千字 1978 年 6 月修订第 2 版 1978 年10月上海第 6 大印刷 載一书号,9017・448 定价,1.25 元

內容提要

本书包括实用英语语法词法和句法方面的各个基本项目,在所用术语上,在语法项目总的安排上,在各个具体项目的处理上,都力求与实际教学相结合。书后有常用不规则动词表,英语语音和构词法三个附录。

本书可供大专学校学生、中等学校教师和自修英语 者参考。

说明

本书第一版于一九六四年由商务印书馆出版,**文化大革** 命前后曾印刷过多次。

当前,在以华主席为首的党中央领导下,全国人民正在深入开展揭发批判"四人帮"反党集团的斗争,我国社会主义革命和建设事业蓬勃发展,毛主席的革命外交路线不断取得新的胜利。为了满足广大工农兵、干部和技术人员学习英语的迫切需要,现将原书修订出版。

这次修改着重充实例句的內容和增加例句数量。至于语 法项目,除少数地方略有增添外,沒有多大变动;语法的体系、 术语和项目的安排,也基本上保持原来面貌。

在修改过程中,仍力求简明扼要。然而,由于编者水平有限和时间的关系,修改本无论在例句的内容或语法项目上都有许多缺点。我们衷心希望读者提出批评意见,以便改正。

编 者 一九七七年十二月**于北京**

目 次

第一章	几个基本语法概念	11
词	法和句法(1.1)——词类和句子	成分(1.2)——词类
(1.	3)句子成分(1.4)词类	和句子成分的关系
(1.	.5)——短语、从句和句子(1.6)-	——词序(1.7)
第二章	名词	19
	、定义(2.1)	
	,种类(2 .2— 2 .3)	
Ξ	数(2.42.7)	
	、格(2.8—2.13)	
,	、性(2.14—2.15)	
	,用法 (2 .16)	
	· 冠词········	31
	、 概说(3.1—3.2)	
	,用法(3.3—3.7)	
	代词	41
	、 概说(4.1—4.2)	•
	、人称代词(4.3—4.4)	
	、物主代词(4.5—4.6)	
	、自身代词(4.7—4.8)	.
	、相互代词(4.9-4.10)	
	、指示代词(4.11—4.15) レ	
	、疑问代词(4.16—4.18)レ	

	//,	大宋代 阿(*. 12)— *. 20)
	九、	不定代词(4.21—4.22)
	十、	各个不定代词用法举例(4.23—4.40)
		some (4.23)—any (4.24)—no (4.25)—all (4.26)
		—both (4.27)—none (4.28)—either (4.29)—
		neither (4.30)—each (4.31)—every (4.32)—
		other (4.33)—another (4.34)—much (4.35)—
		many (4.36)—a few 和 few (4.37)—a little 和
		little (4.38)——one (4.39)——复合不定代词(4.40)
第王	i章	数词71
	٠-,	概说(5.1—5.2)
		基数词(5.3—5.5)
	Ξ,	序数词(5.6—5.8)
	四、	分数和小数的读法(5.9)
	£,	年、月、日、时刻表示法(5.10-5.11)
第六	章	形容词和副词80
	٠,	形容词(6.1—6.6)
	Ξ,	副词(6.7—6.13)
	Ξ,	比较等级的一些特殊用法(6.14—6.24)
		两种不同形式和意义的比较等级(6.14)——as as 和
		not so as 或 not as as (6.15)——表示"几倍
		于" (6.16)——表示程度 (6.17)——"比较级+and+比
		较级" (6.18)——the more the more 的用法 (6.19)
		—more than 和 less than (6.20)—no more than
		和 not more than (6.21)—no less than 和 not
		less than (6.22)——all the better 和 so much the
		better (6.23)——最高级有时不表示比较(6.24)

7 No. 3=1/A

第十	章	动词概说	••••••	9	95
	概证	说(7.1)——限定动词和非限定动词(7.2)	——实义	, •	
	动i	司、连系动词、情态动词和助动词(7.3)—	及物动	ı	
		n不及物动词(7.4)——短语动词(7.5)—			
		×形式(7.6)	->4.4.4.4		
第八		动词的时态	••••••••	10)6
	٠,	概说(8.1—8.3)			
	Ξ,	一般时态	•		
		(一) 概说(8.4—8.5)			
		(二) 现在一般时(8.6—8.10)			
		(三)过去一般时(8.11—8.13)			
		(四) 将来一般时(8.14—8.16)			
		(五) 过去将来一般时(8.17-8.18)			
	Ξ,	进行时态			
		(一) 概说(8.19—8.21)			
		(二) 现在进行时(8.22—8.24)			
		(三) 过去进行时(8.25—8.29)			
		(四) 将来进行时(8.30)	•		
		(五)过去将来进行时(8.31)			
	四、	完成时态			
		(一) 概说(8.32—8.34)	•	•	
		(二) 现在完成时(8.35—8.40)			
		(三) 过去完成时(8.41—8.42)			
		(四) 将来完成时(8.43—8.44)	•		
	五、	完成进行时态			
		(一) 概说(8.45—8.47)			
		(二) 现在完成进行时(8.48-8.50)		,	
		(三) 过去完成进行时(8.51)			

į

六、	时态	的一致	(8.52-	-8 .54)
----	----	-----	--------	----------------

第九	,章	语态	148
	语态	(9.1)——被动语态的基本概念(9.2)——被动语	
	态的	形式(9.3)——被动语态的一般疑问句和否定结	
	构(9	.4)——各种时态的被动语态举例(9.5)——主动	
	语态	变为被动语态 (9.6)——被动语态的用法 (9.7)	
		短语动词的被动语态(9.8)——含有情态动词的	,
	被动	语态(9.9)——含有两个宾语的主动结构变为被	
	动结	构(9.10)——含有复合宾语的主动结构变为被	
	动结	构 (9.11)——被动语态和"连系动词 to be+作	
	表语	用的过去分词"的区别(9.12)	
第十	·章	助动词	158
	`	概说(10.1)	
	Ξ,	be (10.2)	
	Ξ,	have (10.3)	
	四、	do (10.4)	•
	五.	shall 和 will (10.5—10.6)	
	六、	should 和 would (10.7—10.8)	•
第十	章	情态动词······	165
	٠,	概说(11.1—11.4)	
	_,	can 和 could (11.5—11.9)	•
	Ξ,	may 和 might (11.10—11.13)	
		must (11.14—11.18)	
	五。	have to (11.19)	
	六、	shall (11.20—11.21)	
	七、	should (11.22—11.25)	

八、will (11.26—11.27)
九, would (11.28—11.30)
+, ought (11.31
+-, dare (11.3
+=, need (11.3
第十二章 语气和虚拟语气 184
一、概说(12.1)
二、虚拟语气(12.2—12.10)
三、虚拟语气的其他用法(12.11—12.15)
第十三章 非限定动词195
一、概说(13.1)
二、动词不定式(13.2—13.13)
三、动名词(13.14—13.22)
四、分词(13.23—13.31)
第十四章 介词 227
一、概说(14.1—14.4)
二、介词短语(14.5—14.7)
三、常用介词的主要用法举例(14.8—14.57)
about (14.8)—above (14.9)—across (14.10)—
after (14.11)—against (14.12)—along (14.13)—
among (14.14)—around (14.15)—as (14.16)—
at (14.17)—before (14.18)—behind (14.19)—
below (14.20)—beside (14.21)—besides (14.22)
— between (14.23) — beyond (14.24) — but (14.25)
—by (14.26)—down (14.27)—during (14.28)
—except (14.29)—for (14.30)—from (14.31)
— in (14.32) — inside (14.33) — into (14.34)

	like (14.35)—near (14.36)—of (14.37)—off	
	(14.38)—on (14.39)—out of (14.40)—outside	
-	(14.41)—over (14.42)—past (14.43)—round	
	(14.44) — since (14.45) — through (14.46) —	
	throughout (14.47)—till (14.48)—to (14:49)—	
	toward(s) (14.50)—under (14.51)—until (14.52)	
	— up (14.53)— upon (14.54)— with (14.55)—	
	within (14.56)—without (14.57)	
第十五章	£ 连词和感叹词······	258
	连词概说(15.1—15.3)	
- ,	常用连词举例(15.4—15.72)	
	after (15.4)—although (15.5)—and (15.6)—	
	and yet (15.7)—as (15.8)—as as (15.9)—	
	as far as (15.10)—as if (15.11)—as long as	
	(15.12)—as soon as (15.13)—as well as (15.14)	
	(15.17)—both and (15.18)—but (15.19)—	
	but then (15.20)—by the time (15.21)—either	
	or (15.22)—even if (15.23)—even though (15.24)	
	every time (15.25) for (15.26) hence	
	(15.27)—however (15.28)—if (15.29)—in case	
	(15.30)—in order that (15.31)—in the meantime	
	(15.32)—lest (15.33)—neither nor (15.34)—	
	nevertheless (15.35)—no matter (15.36)—nor	
	(15.37)—no sooner than (15.38)—not only	
	but also (15.39)—now; now that (15.40)—on	
	the contrary (15.41)—on the one hand on the	•
	other (hand) (15.42)—once (15.43)—only (15.44)	

or (15.45)—or else (15.46)—otherwise (15.47)

(15.49)—since (15.50) —so (15.51) —so far as	
(15.52)—so that (15.53)—so that (15.54)—	
still (15.55)—than (15.56)—that (15.57)—the	
moment (15.58) — therefore (15.59) — though	
(15.60) — till (15.61) — unless (15.62) — until	
(15.63) — whatever (15.64) — when (15.65) —	
whenever (15.66)—whereas (15.67)—wherever	
(15.68) — whether (15.69) — while (15.70) —	
whoever (15.71)—yet (15.72)	
三、咸叹词概说(15.73)	
四、常用威叹词(15.74)	
第十六章 句子概说 282	
一、句子的特征(16.1)	
二、句子的种类和类型(16.2—16.3)	
三、句子的成分	
(一) 槪说(16.4)	
(二) 主语(16.5)	
(三) 谓语动词(16.6)	
(四) 表语(16.7)	
(五) 宾语(16.8—16.9)	
直接宾语和间接宾语(16.10—16.12)	
同源宾语(16.13)	
复合宾语(16.14—16.15)	
(六) 定语(16.16—16.19)	
(七) 状语(16.20—16.23)	
第十七章 简单句 30	6
一、简单句的基本句型(17.1)	

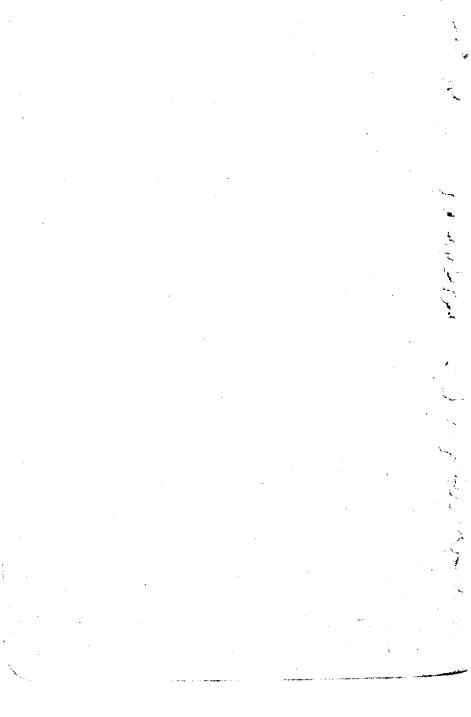
-provided (15.48)—scarcely ... when (before)

	=,	陈述句(17.2—17.4)	
	Ξ,	疑问句。	
		(一) 概说(17.5)	
		(二) 一般疑问句(17.6—17.9)	
		(三) 特殊疑问句(17.10—17.12)	
		(四) 选择疑问句(17.13—17.14)	
		(五) 反意疑问句(17.15—17.16)	
	四。	祈使句(17.17—17.20)	
	Æ,	感叹句(17.21—17.24)	
	六、	there+be 结构(17.25—17.28)	
第十	一八章	E 并列句和复合句······· 3	25
	-,	并列句(18.1—18.2)	
	Ξ,	复合句 ,	
		(一) 概说(18.3—18.7)	
	1	(二)主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句(18.8—18.11)	
	, •0	(三)直接引语和间接引语(18.12—18.15)	
	·	(四) 定语从句(18.16—18.24)	
		(五) 状语从句(18.25—18.34)	
第十	-九章	t 谓语动词和主语的一致············ 3	58
,	谓语	· 动词和作主语的名词的一致(19.1)——谓语动	
	词和	1作主语的人称代词的一致(19.2)——两个或两	
	个以	上作主语用的单数名词用 and 连接时 (19.3)	
		-两个作主语用的名词或代词由介词 with 连接	
	时(1	9.4)——两个作主语用的名词或代词由 either	
		neither nor 连接时 (19.5)——两个作主语用	
		词或代词由 as well as 连接时(19.6)——people,	
		e, militia, cattle 等作主语时 (19.7)——作主语	
	~	11	

	用的红	集体名词family, crew, class, crowd, committee,	
	audie	nce 等后面谓语动词的用法 (19.8)——表示"时	,
	间""会	金钱"等的名词的复数作主语时(19.9)——成对	
		司作主语时用单数谓语动词(19.10)	
第二	十章	句子的独立成分	362
	句子的	的独立成分(20.1)——威叹词作独立成分(20.2)	
	 у	res 和 no (20.3)——称呼语(20.4)——情态词	
)——插入语(20. 6)	
第二	-+-1	章 it 的用法······	364
	·一、1	弋词 it (21.1—21.3)	
	= , §	引词 it (21.4—21.6)	
第二	-十二章	造 省略和倒装	369
	一、省	省略(22.1)	
	二、作	到装(22.2—22.3)	
第二	十三章	t 标点符号⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯	377
	概说(23.1)——逗号(23.2)——分号(23.3)——冒号	
	(23.4)	—— 何号 (23.5) —— 问号 (23.6)—— 惊叹号	•
	(23.7)	——引号 (23.8)——破折号 (23.9)——连字号	
	(23.10	•	
附录	ŧ I	常用不规则动词表	384
	П	英语语音	390
	Ш	构词法	4 00

インド えいがた

The state of the s



第一章 几个基本语法概念

- 1. 1 词法和句法 本书要讲的主要内容是词法和句法。
- 1) 词法 (morphology) 词法研究的对象是各种词的 形式及其用法

英语词类的形式变化有:名词和代词的数、格和性的形式变化;动词的人称、时态、语态、语气等形式变化;以及形容词和副词比较等级的形式变化。

- 2) 句法 (syntax) 句法研究的对象是句子各个组成部 分及其安排的规律.
- **1.** 2 **词类和句子成分** 根据词的形式、意义及其在句中的功用将词分为若干类,叫做词类。一个句子由各个功用不同的部分所构成,这些部分叫做句子成分。

学一个词,要学它的发音、拼法、意义,还要记它的词类, 更重要的是要了解它和其他词的关系,及其在句中作什么句 子成分. 如 China is a great socialist country (中国是一个 伟大的社会主义国家) 一句中的 China 这个单词所属的词类 是名词,在句子中作主语·

1. 3 词类 (parts of speech) 英语的词通常分为十大 类:

名 称	汉译	缩写式	例	词
noun	名词	n.	pen	钢笔
pronoun	代词	pron.	we	我们
adjective	形容词	adj.	great	伟大的

numeral	数词	num.	four	四
verb	动词	v.	write	写
adverb	副词	adv.	quickly	快
article	冠词	art.	$a - \uparrow$, the	这,那
preposition	介词	prep.	from	从
conjunction	连词	conj.	and	和
interjection	感叹词	int.	oh	噢

[注一] 属于前六类(名、代、形、数、动、副等词)的词都有实义,叫做实词 (notional word). 属于后四类(冠、连、介、感等词)的词没有实义,叫做 虚词 (form word).

[注二] 不少的词可以属于几个词类,如 work (工作,动词和名词), fast (快,形容词和副词), since (自从,连词和介词)等.

- **1.** 4 句子成分 (members of the sentence) 英语的句子成分有六种:
- 1) 主语 (subject) 它是句子所要说明的人或事物,是一句的主体. 如 I study English (我学习英语) 中的 I.
- 2) 谓语动词 (predicate verb) 它是说明主语的动作 或状态的, 如 I study English 中的 study.
- 3) 表语 (predicative) 它是放在连系动词之后表示主语的身分或特征的,如 I am a worker (我是一个工人)中的 worker; Our classroom is clean (我们的教室很干净)中的 clean.
- 4) 宾语 (object) 它是表示及物动词动作的对象的,如 I study English 中的 English,介词后面的名词或代词,叫做介词的宾语,如 We study English for the revolution (我们为革命而学习英语)中的 revolution,就是介词 for 的宾语.

- 5) 定语 (attribute) 它是限定或修饰名词或代词用的, 如 He is an old peasant (他是一个老农) 中的 old.
- 6) 状语 (adverbial) 它是修饰动词、形容词、副词或全句用的, 如 He works hard (他努力工作) 中的 hard.

[注] 虚词在句子中一律不能作为句子成分.

1. 5 词类和句子成分的关系 在句子里,一定的句子成分由一定的词类来担任,现将哪些句子成分通常由哪些词类来担任列述如下:

主语: 名词和代词

Peking is the capital of our socialist motherland. 北京是我们社会主义祖国的首都. (名词 Peking 作主语)

She is fond of sports. 她爱好运动. (代词 She 作主语)

谓语动词: 动词

We study Marxism diligently. 我们努力学习马克思主义. (动词 study 作谓语动词)

表语: 名词、代词和形容词

His father is a worker. 他父亲是个工人. (名词 worker 作表语)

Our workshop is *bright* and *clean*. 我们车间明亮而干净. (形容词 bright 和 clean 作表语)

That classroom is ours. 那个教室是我们的。 (代词 ours 作表语)

宾语: 名词和代词

We love labour. 我们热爱劳动. (名词 labour 作宾语) Lei Feng always thought of others. 雷锋总是想到别

人. (代词 others 作宾语)

定语: 形容词

Workers, peasants and soldiers are excellent teachers.

工农兵是好老师. (形容词 excellent 作定语)

状语: 副词

Our monitor studies well. 我们班长学得很好 (副词 well 作状语)

1.6 短语、从句和句子

- 1) 短语 (phrase) 具有一定意义但不构成句子或从句的一组词,叫做短语。短语在句子里可以单独作为一个句子。成分. 短语的种类很多,但本书只用下列几个短语名称:
- a) 不定式短语 (infinitive phrase) 如 He likes to read newspapers after lunch (他喜欢在午饭后读报) 中的 to read newspapers after lunch.
- b) 动名词短语 (gerundial phrase) 如 Have you finished repairing the machine (你修完那台机器了吗?) 中的 repairing the machine.
- c) 分词短语 (participial phrase) 如 I saw many people working in the fields (我看见许多人在地里干活) 中的 working in the fields.
- d) 介词短语 (prepositional phrase) 如 She is the youngest worker in the factory (她是这个工厂里年纪最小的工人) 中的 in the factory.
- 2) 从句 (clause) 内含主语和谓语,表达一定的概念,但不成为一个独立句子的一组词,叫做从句,从句在句子里可以作为一个句子成分,一般由连词、关系代词或关系副词所引导,从句的种类有;

- a) 主语从句 (subject clause) 如 What I want to say is this (我要说的是这么一点) 中的 what I want to say.
- b) 表语从句 (predicative clause) 如 This is what I want to say (这是我要说的) 中的 what I want to say.
- c)宾语从句 (object clause) 如 I have said what I want to say (我说完了我要说的话) 中的 what I want to say.
- d) 定语从句 (attributive clause) 如 This is the thing I want to say (这就是我要说的) 中的 I want to say.
- e) 状语从句 (adverbial clause) 如 If you want to say something, say it clearly (假如你要说什么, 就应说清楚)中的 if you want to say something.
- 3) 句子 (sentence) 内含主语和谓语动词,有比较完整的意义的一组词,叫做句子.

从句子结构本身来看,句子可分为:

- a) 简单句 (simple sentence) 如: The People's Republic of China was founded in 1949. 中华人民共和国于一九四九年成立.
- b) 幷列句(compound sentence) 如: Tom's father worked from morning till night but he got very little money. 汤姆的父亲从早干到晚,但挣得的钱很少.
- c) 复合句 (complex sentence) 如: It's a long time since I saw you last. 好久沒有看见你了.

从说话人说话的目的来看, 句子可分为:

- a) 陈述句 (declarative sentence) 如: Only socialism can save China. 只有社会主义能够救中国.
- b) 疑问句 (interrogative sentence) 如: Did you see him yesterday? 你昨天见到他了吗?

- c) 祈使句 (imperative sentence) 如: Please take these spades to the cotton field. 请把这些铁锹拿到棉田里去.
- d) 感叹句 (exclamatory sentence) 如: What a beautiful voice she has! 她嗓子多好啊!

〔注〕 关于句子的分类详见 16.2-16.3.

- 1.7 词序 (word order) 词序就是词或句子成分在句子中的排列顺序 英语里的词和句子成分在句子里的位置比较固定 现将句子成分和虚词在陈述句中的一般位置举例说明如下:
 - 1) 主语的位置 在陈述句基本结构的最前面. 如: We must help each other. 我们应该互相帮助.
 - 2) 谓语动词的位置 在主语之后,如: We go to night school on Mondays and Thursdays. 我们每逢星期一和星期四上夜校.
 - 3) 表语的位置 在连系动词之后. 如: People's communes are fine. 人民公社好.
 - 4) 宾语的位置 在及物动词或介词之后. 如:

Our commune grows mainly rice and maize. 我们公社主要种水稻和玉米.

Shanghai is the birthplace of the Chinese Communist Party. 上海是中国共产党的诞生地.

5) 定语的位置 单词作定语,一般放在被修饰语的前面,短语和从句作定语则放在被修饰语的后面.如:

The school library has many books on agriculture. 校图书馆有许多关于农业的书. (many 和 on agriculture, 都修饰 books, many 在 books 的前面, on agriculture 则在它的后面)

6) 状语的位置 修饰形容词或副词的状语放在被修饰 语之前; 修饰动词的状语有的放在动词之前, 有的放在动词 之后. 如动词有宾语, 状语一般须放在宾语之后. 如:

The Summer Palace is very beautiful. 顾和园非常美丽. (very 为状语, 修饰形容词 beautiful, 放在 beautiful 之前)

- I know him well. 我十分了解他. (well 为状语, 修饰动词 know, 放在 know 之后)
- The students often have discussions on current affairs. 这些学生经常讨论时事. (often 为状语, 修饰动词 have, 放在它的前面)
- We study Chairman Mao's works every day. 我们每天学习毛主席的著作. (every day 为状语, 修饰动词 study, 在宾语 works 之后)
- 〔注〕 关于以上所讲各个句子成分在句子里的位置,详见第十六章各有关部分。
- 7) 冠词的位置 冠词在名词之前. 如:

The Communist Party of China is the core of leadership of the whole Chinese people. 中国共产党是 全中国人民的领导核心.

This is a film about the land reform in the countryside. 这是一部关于农村土地改革的电影.

- 8) 介词的位置 介词一般也放在名词或代词之前.如: There is a map of China on the wall. 墙上有一幅中国地图.
 - Chemistry is an important branch of science. 化学是一门重要的科学。

9) 连词的位置 连词一般放在同类的词、短语或从句之间,如:

Chairman Mao *and* the Party Central Committee got to Yenan in January 1937. 毛主席和党中央于一九三七年一月到达延安.

There is no water *or* air on the moon. 月球上沒有水和空气.

He works just as hard as everyone else although he is over sixty. 他尽管六十多岁了,仍和大家一样努力工作。

10) 感叹词的位置 感叹词有时在句子当中,但一般 常在句子最前面. 如:

Oh, it's you! 啊, 是你呀!

第二章 名词

一、定义

2.1 什么是名词 表示人、事物、地点或抽象概念的名称的词, 叫做名词·如:

worker	工人	socialism	社会主义
pencil	铅笔	proletariat	无产阶级
Yenan	延安	time	时间

二、种类

- 2. 2 名词的种类 英语名词可分为两大类:
- 1) 普通名词 (common noun) 普通名词是某一类人、 某一类事物、某种物质或抽象概念的名称,如:

soldier	士兵	water	水
peasant	农民	struggle	斗爭
machine	机器	communism	共产主义
discussion	讨论		

2) 专有名词 (proper noun) 专有名词是个别的人、团体、地方、机构或事物的名称. 其中实词的第一个字母必须大写. 如:

Korea 朝鮮 Karl Marx 卡尔·马克思 London 伦敦 Yang Tzu-jung 杨子荣 the Communist Party of China 中国共产党 the Great Hall of the People 人民大会堂 the Ministry of Foreign Affairs 外交部 the Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution 无产阶级文化大革命

the Red Star People's Commune 红星人民公社

- 2. 3 普通名词的种类 普通名词可进一步分为:
- 1) 类名词 (class noun) 类名词表示人或事物属于某一 **类**. 如:

tractor拖拉机panda熊猫factory工厂teacher教员

2) 集体名词 (collective noun) 集体名词是一群人或 好多件东西的总称. 如:

> class 阶级, 班 government 政府 party 党派 army 军队

3) 物质名词 (material noun) 物质名词表示物质或 不具备确定形状和大小的个体的实物 如:

steel钢grain粮食fire火cotton棉花

4) 抽象名词 (abstract noun) 抽象名词表示动作、状态、品质或其他抽象概念. 如:

happiness幸福life生活labour劳动dictatorship专政

[注] 名词又可分为可数名词 (countable noun) 与不可数名词 (uncountable noun). 可数名词有单、复数之分,不可数名词一般不分单数和复数. 类名词和集体名词一般是可数的; 抽象名词、物质名词和专有名词一般是不可数的. 有少数名词既可用作不可数名词, 又可用作可数名词, 但意义有所不同, 如:

	用作不可数名词	用作可数名词
glass	玻璃	玻璃杯
paper	纸	报纸、文件
tin	锡	罐头
copper	例	铜币

2. 4 概说 英语可数名词有单数 (singular number) 和复数 (plural number) 两种形式 表示一个人或事物用单数,表示一个以上的人或事物用复数. 如:

book — books 书country — countries 国家bus — buses 公共汽车boy — boys男孩

2.5 名词复数构成法 绝大多数名词的复数形式由在单数形式后面加 -s 或 -es 构成.现将一般构成名词复数的方法及其读音规则列表如下:

构 成 法	读音	例 字
在词末加 -s	1s 在清辅 音后发 [s] 音 2s 在独辅 音和元音 后发[2]音	1. desk — desks [desks] 书桌 map — maps [mæps] 地图 lake — lakes [leiks] 湖 2. worker — workers ['weːkez] 工人 field — fields [fiːldz] 田地 day — days [deiz] 天, 日子 mile — miles [mailz] 英里
在词末加 -(e)s 1. 在以 [s] [z] [ʃ] [tʃ] [dʒ] 等音结尾的 名词之后加 -es 2. 如词末为 e, 只加 -s	-(e)s 读作 [iz]	1. class — classes ['kla:siz] 班 box — boxes ['boksiz] 盒子 brush — brushes ['brʌʃiz] 刷子 watch — watches ['wotʃiz] 表 buzz — buzzes ['bʌziz] 电话铃 2. page — pages ['peidsiz] 页 horse — horses ['hɔ:siz] 马
如词末为 -f 或 -fe, 则一般变为 -ves	-ves 读作。 [vz]	shelf — shelves [ʃelvz] 架 life — lives [laivz] 生命, 生活 knife — knives [naivz] 刀

如词末为辅音+ y, 则变 y 为 i, 再加 -es	-ies 读作 [iz]	party — part <i>ies</i> ['pɑːtiz] 党派 factory — factor <i>ies</i> ['fæktriz] 工厂 family — famil <i>ies</i> ['fæmiliz] 家庭
如词末为辅音+ o,则加 ·es	-es 读作 [z]	hero — heroes ['hiorouz] 英雄 potato — potatoes[po'teitouz] 土豆 tomato — tomatoes [tə'maːtouz] 西红柿

- [注一] 少数以 -o 结尾的名词变复数时只加 -s, 如 radio radios (收音机), piano pianos (钢琴), photo photos (照片), cuckoo cuckoos (杜鹃). 有些以 -f 结尾的名词变为复数时,也只加 -s, 如 handkerchiefs (手帕), roofs (屋顶)等.
- [注二] 以 -th 结尾的名词变复数时, 后加 -s. 但原来发 [0] 音的 -th 多变为 [ð] 音, 后面 -s 也随之而发 [z] 音, 如 mouth [mau0] mouths [mau0z] (口); youth [ju:0] youths [ju:0z] (青年), 但也有不变音的, 如 month [man0] months [man0s] (月份).

英语里有一些名词的复数形式是不规则的, 现列表于下:

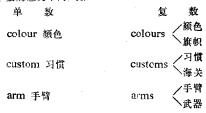
构 成 法	例字
变内部元音	man [mæn] — men [men] 男人 woman ['wumən] — women ['wimin] 女人 foot [fut] — feet [fi:t] 足 tooth [tu:0] — teeth [ti:0] 齿 mouse [maus] — mice [mais] 鼠
词未加 -en	ox [ɔks] — oxen [ˈɔksən] 公牛
形式不变	sheep — sheep 羊 deer — deer 底 fish — fish <u>鱼</u>
外来词: 一些从拉丁文或希腊文 借用来的名词仍保留其 原来的名词复数形式	crisis ['kraisis] — crises ['kraisi:z] 危机 phenomenon [fi'nominon] — phenomena [fi'nomino] 现象 stratum ['streitəm] — strata ['streitə] 地层

[〔]注一〕 child (小孩) 的复数形式是 children.

[注二] 有些名词通常只有复数形式,如:

scissors	剪刀	goods	货物
trousers	裤子	clothes	衣服
spectacles	眼镜	pincers	钳子
scales	天平、秤	measles	麻疹

[注三] 有些名词的复数有两个意思,一个与单数的**意义相似.另一个则** 和单数的意义不同,如:



[注四] 复合名词变成复数时,有下列三种情况:

- 在词末加 -s 或 -es, 如 film-goers 经常看电影的人, tooth-brushes 牙刷, greenhouses 温室.
- 2) 在主体名词末加 -s, 如 sons-in-law 女婿, editors-in-chief 总编辑, comrades-in-arms 战友, vice-premiers 副总理.
- 两个构成部分都要变成复数,如 women cadres 女干部,men doctors 男医生.
- 2.6 物质名词 是不可数名词,一般只有单数形式,但表示不同的类别时,可用复数.如: teas (各种茶), steels (各种钢), fruits (各种水果), grasses (各种草)等. snows, sands, waters 则分别表示连绵不断的"雪"(积雪)、"沙"(即沙漠)和"水"(即江水、海水).
- **2.** 7 **抽象名词** 一般为不可数名词,但有些**抽象名词**则是可数名词. 如:

hope — hopes 希望 idea — ideas 想法 job — jobs 工作 day — days 日,天

[注] 抽象名词表示具体事例时,也可用复数. 如:

worry — worries 忧愁 need — needs 需要 dislike — dislikes 厌恶 joy — joys 欢乐

2. 8 概说 格 (case) 是名词或代词具有的形式及其变化,表示与共它词的关系. 英语的名词有三个格: 主格 (nominative case)、 宾格 (objective case) 和所有格 (possessive case). 但英语的名词除所有格有形式的变化外, 主格和宾格都沒有形式变化. 名词在句中是主格或是宾格, 主要通过它在句中的作用和位置来确定. 例如:

Every written sentence should begin with a capital letter. 每个书写出来的句子开头都要用大写字母。 (sentence 在句中作主语, 故是主格; letter 是介词 with 的宾语, 是宾格)

The workers are helping the commune to set up a farm tool factory. 工人们正在帮助公社修建一座农具厂. (workers 是主语, 故为主格; commune 是 are helping 的宾语, 故是宾格)

2. 9 表示有生命的东西的名词的所有格 表示有生命的东西的名词 (人或动物) 的末尾, 加上 's, 即构成所有格,可放在另一名词之前, 作定语用. 如:

the people's commune 人民公社
Hsiao Wang's note-book 小王的笔记本
children's books 儿童读物
my father's room 我父亲的房间
构成名词所有格的方法见下表;

构成法	读音	例 词
	1. 's 在清辅音后读 [s]	1. Jack's [dzæks] pen 杰克的钢笔 the peasant's [pezants] house 这个农民的房子
单数名词末 尾加 's	2. 's 在漁辅音和元音后读 [2]	2. the worker's ['wə:kəz] book 这个工人的书 the hero's ['hiərouz] name 这个英雄的名字
	3. 在 [s] [z] [ʃ] [tʃ] [dʒ] 等音后读 [iz]	3. Charles's ['tfaːlziz] home 查理的家
有词尾-s或-cs 的复数名词末尾只加","	读音不变	the students' exercise books 学生们的练习本 the workers' college 工人大学 the boys' game 男孩子们的游戏
不以-(e)s结 尾的复数名 词,末尾仍 要加 's	's 的读音与单数名词加 -s 同	men's clothes 男人的衣服 Children's Day 儿童节 sheep's wool 羊毛

[注] 有些指时间、距离等无生命的东西的名词,也可加's构成所有格。如:

today's paper 今天的报纸 ten minutes' walk 十分钟的步行 世界、国家、城镇等也可加 's 构成所有格. 如 the world's people 世界人民 China's capital 中国的首都 Peking's weather 北京的天气

2. 10 表示无生命东西的名词的所有关系 一般与 of 结成短语. 如:

the door of the room the title of the film

房间的门 影片的名字 [注] 表示有生命的东西的名词,有时也用 of 构成短语,表示所有关系.如:

the death of Stalin 斯大林的逝世 the son of a poor peasant 贫农的儿子

- 2.11 名词所有格与它所修饰的名词的逻辑关系 名词所有格在逻辑上可能是它所修饰的名词的主语,也可能是它所修饰的名词的实语.
- 1) 名词所有格是它所修饰的名词的逻辑主语 如: the barefoot doctor's arrival 赤脚医生的到来, the Party's concern for the younger generation 党对年青一代的关怀, the hatred of the people for the enemy 人民对敌人的仇恨
- 2) 名词所有格是它所修饰的名词的逻辑宾语 如: the reactionary rule's overthrow 反动统治的被推翻, the occupation of Czechoslovakia by the U.S.S.R. 苏联对捷克的占领, the recognition of Mozambique by the Chinese Government 中国政府对莫桑比克的承认, the exploitation of the third world by the superpowers 超级大国对第三世界的剝削.
- 2. 12 "of+名词所有格"上面讲的两种所有格的形式可以结合起来,构成"of+所有格"形式,表示部分观念或有感情色彩. 如:
- 1) 表示部分观念 如: a friend of my sister's (=one of my sister's friends) 我妹妹的一个朋友。a picture of Comrade Chang's 张同志 (具有的照片中)的一张照片 (比较: a picture of Comrade Chang 张同志本人的照片,即照片上是张同志的像).
- 2) 有威情色彩 如: this lovely child of your aunt's 你婶母的这个可爱的孩子。

2. 13 **名词所有格所修饰的词的省略** 名词所有格所修饰的词,如果前面已经提到,往往可以省略,以免重复.如:

The dictionary is not mine, but Comrade Wang's. 这本词典不是我的,是王同志的.

名词所有格后面指地点等的名词,有的习惯上可省去不用,如:

- I met him at the barber's (shop). 我在理发馆遇见了他.
- I went to my *uncle's* (house) yesterday. 我昨天到我叔叔家去了.

五、性

2. 14 概说 现代英语的名词在语法上沒有特定的表示性 (gender) 的形式。但有一部分名词,也可分为阳性 (masculine)、阴性 (feminine) 和中性 (neuter)。一般地讲,表示男人或雄性动物的名词属于阳性,表示女人或雌性动物的名词属于阴性,表示非生物及抽象概念的名词属于中性。当它们由代词来代替时,分别用 he (his), she (her), it (its).

下面是各个性的名词的例字:

阳性: hero 男英雄, father 父亲, son 儿子, nephew 侄 儿, bridegroom 新郎, cock 公鸡, bull 公牛.

阴性: heroine 女英雄, mother 母亲, daughter 女儿, niece 侄女, bride 新娘, hen 母鸡, cow 母牛.

中性: lamp 灯, kindness 仁慈, friendship 友谊, house 房屋.

【注】 英语有不少名词不分性,如: person 人, parent 父亲或母亲, cous-

in 堂(表)兄弟,堂(表)姐妹, worker 工人, secretary 书记,秘书, nurse 护士, horse 马, pig 猪等.

2. 15 英语名词表示性有下列一些特点:

1) 用不同的名词来表示不同的性, 如:

阳性: boy 男孩, uncle 叔父, nephew 侄儿, king 国王, gentleman 先生, boar 公猪.

阴性: girl 女孩, aunt 婶母, niece 侄女, queen 王后, lady 女士, sow 母猪.

2) 在阳性名词后加 -ess 来构成阴性名词, 如:

阳性: actor 男演员, host 男主人, steward (飞机上) 男服务员, prince 王子.

阴性: actress 女演员, hostess 女主人, stewardess (飞机上)女服务员, princess 公主.

3) 不分性的名词如要表示所指人物的性别,可在其前面加 woman, man, girl, boy 等词,如:

a girl student 女学生 a man driver 男司机 a woman worker 女工

以 man 和 woman 开头的名词变成复数时, 一般用 men 和 women. 如: women workers, men drivers.

'man'和'woman'的单复数也可放在另一名词之后,构成复合词,表示阴、阳性,如:

militiaman 男民兵(单数) militiawoman 女民兵(单数)

militiamen 男民兵(复数) militiawomen 女民兵(复数)

六、用法

- **2.** 16 名词的用法 名词在句子里可用作下列各种句子成分:
 - 1) 作主语

Women are a great force in the revolution. 妇女是 革命的一支伟大力量.

His father joined the ranks of the revolution in 1938. 他父亲于一九三八年参加革命.

- 2) 作宾语
- a) 及物动词的宾语

We love our socialist home-land. 我们热爱我们的 社会主义祖国

Have you finished the exercise? 你做完练习了吗?

b) 介词的宾语

The school graduates have gone to settle in the countryside. 这些知识青年去农村安家落戶了.

They live and work with the *peasants*. 他们和农民 同住同劳动.

3) 作表语

Comrade Wang is a scientist. 王同志是个科学家.

4) 作宾语补足语 即在另一作宾语的名词或代词之后, 两者一起构成复合宾语. (详见 16. 14—16. 15)

They elected Comrade Chen *leader* of the Party group. 他们选陈同志为党小组长.

Everybody called him Uncle Liu. 大家都叫他刘大伯.

5) 作定语

- a) 名词所有格作定语. 如: the *People's* Republic of China 中华人民共和国, *Lei Feng's* diary 雷锋日记, *China's* industry 中国的工业.
- b) 名词不改变词形,修饰另一名词. 如: vegetable plot 菜地, Party member 党员, university student 大学生, the labour movement 工人运动.
- 6) 作状语 多限于表示时间和距离等概念的名词。如: We walked 100 li a day on our training march. 我们拉练时每天步行一百里。
 - This luggage weighs 20 kilograms. 这件行李重二十 公斤.
 - The 'Panda' transistor radio cost me one hundred yuan. 我买这架熊猫牌半导体收音机花了一百元.

第三章 冠词

一、概说

- 3. 1 **什么是冠词** 冠词 (article) 是虚词, 放在名词之前, 用来说明名词所指的人或事物, 一般沒有句子重音.
- **3.** 2 **冠词概说** . 冠词分不定冠词 (indefinite article) 和定冠词 (definite article) 两种。
 - 1) 不定冠词 a, an
- a) a 和 an 均用在单数名词之前,表示某一类人或事物中的"一个",相当于汉语的"一",但不强调数目观念.
- b) a 用在辅音之前, an 用在元音之前. 如: a notebook 一个笔记本, a people's commune 一个人民公社, an old man 一位老人, an English class 一掌英语课.

字母 u 读作 [ju:] 时,由于第一个音 [j] 是辅音,故前面用 a,不用 an. 如: a useful book 一本有用的书, a university 一所大学. 字母 h 如不发音,第一个音是元音,前面用 an 而不用 a,如 an hour [ən'auə] 一小时, an honest [ən'ənist] person 一个诚实的人.

- c) a 和 an 在句中分別弱读作 [ə] 和 [ən].
- 2) 定冠词 the
- a) 表示某一类人或事物中的 "某一个", 相当于汉语的 "这"或"那".
- b) 不论单数名词或复数名词, 也不论可数名词或不可数 名词, 前面都可以用 the.

c) 在元音前读 [ði], 辅音前读 [ðə]. 如: the evening [ði¹i:vniŋ] (傍晚), the car [ðə ka:] (汽车), 在元音字母 u 发 [juː] 和半元音字母 y 发 [j] 时, 仍读 [ðə].如: the unit [ðə-¹juːnit] (单位), the yard [ðəjaːd] (院子).

二、用法

3.3 不定冠词的用法

1) 指人或事物的某一种类,这是不定冠词的基本用法. Hsiao Hsu's father is a miner. 小徐的父亲是矿工, (而不是其他工人)

Give me a ballpen, please. 请给我一支圆珠笔. (而不是钢笔或其他)

- 2) 指某一类人或事物中的任何一个,
 - A steel worker makes steel. 钢铁工人炼钢. (意即 任何一个钢铁工人都炼钢)
 - A triangle has three angles. 三角形有三个角. (意即任何一个三角形都有三个角)
- 3) 指某人或某物,但不具体说明何人或何物. He has just come back from a Peking factory. 他 刚从北京某工厂回来.
 - A PLA man wants to see you. 有个解放军要见你.
 - A comrade from the Ministry of Education will speak to us next week. 教育部的一位同志下星期来给我们讲话
- 4) 不定冠词还可指"事物的单位",如"每日"、"每斤"等。

The Chinese Export Commodities Fair is held in Kwangchow twice a year. 中国出口商品交易会每年在广州举行两次.

The doctor told him to take the medicine three times a day. 医生叫他一天吃三次药.

3. 4 定冠词的用法

1) 特指某(些)人或某(些)事物,这是定冠词 the 的基本用法.

This is the house where Lu Hsun once lived. 这是鲁迅曾经住过的房子.(以别于其他房子)

The book on the desk is an English dictionary. 书桌上的那本书是一本英语词典. (特指桌上的那本书: 注意名词 book 被 on the desk 短语所限定.) Cairo is the capital of Egypt. 开罗是埃及的首都. We plan to cut the wheat in these fields in three days' time. 我们计划三天后割这些地的小麦. (特指这些地里的小麦)

The General Line is being carried out with great success. 总路线执行得很成功. (特指我国社会主义建设总路线)

2) 指说话人与听话人彼此所熟悉的人或事物.

Open the door, please. 请开门. (双方都知道指的是哪一个门)

Comrade Wang is in the office. 王同志在办公室里. (双方都知道指的是哪个办公室)

Let's meet at the railway station. 我们在火车站碰头吧. (双方都知道指的是哪一个火车站)

3) 复述上文提过的人或事物.

Last night I read a story and a play. The story is about the Long March and the play about the 1923 railway strike. 昨晚我读了一篇故事和一个剧本. 那篇故事是关于长征的,剧本是关于一九二三年铁路工人大罢工的.

- 4) 表示在世界上独一无二的事物,如: the sun 太阳, the moon 月亮, the earth 地球, the sky 天空, the world 世界.
- 5) 定冠词 the 有时可用于单数可数名词之前,表示某一类人或事物.

The compass was invented in ancient China. 古代中国发明了指南针.

The transistor radio is very popular in China. 半导体收音机在中国很流行.

[注一] 语法书中的 the verb (动词)和动物学书中的 the elephant (象) 等, 都属于这一类.

[注二] "马是有用的动物"有下面三种说法:

A horse is a useful animal.

The horse is a useful animal.

Horses are useful animals.

- 6) 表示阶级、 党派的名词前必须用 "the". 如: the Chinese Communist Party 中国共产党, the working class 工人阶级, the bourgeoisie 资产阶级, the Communist Youth League 共产主义青年团.
- 7) 定冠词还可与某些形容词连用, 使形容词名词化,代表某一类人. 如: the poor 穷人, the rich 富人, the wounded 伤员, the sick 病号.

8) 在序数词、形容词最高级和表示方位的名词前, 常用 定冠词 the.

Shanghai is the biggest city in China. 上海是中国最大的城市。

January is the first month of the year. 元月是一年中的第一个月份.

The sun rises in the east. 日出东方.

9) 演奏乐器时, 乐器的名称前常用定冠词 the.

At the Children's Palace, some children learn to play the piano, others learn to play the violin. 在 少年宫里, 有的小孩学弹钢琴, 有的学拉小提琴.

10) 下面一些说法中习惯上须用定冠词 the.

in the morning 在早上或上午

in the afternoon 在下午

in the evening 在晚上

to go to the theatre (cinema) 到剧院 (电影院) 去看戏 (电影)

- 3.5 专有名词前冠词的用法 专有名词前一般不用冠词. 如: Shanghai 上海, Britain 英国, Edgar Snow 埃德加·斯诺·但在下列几种场合中,却经常要用定冠词:
 - 1) 在江河、海洋、山脉、群岛的名称前
 the Yellow River 黄河, the Baltic (Sea) 波罗的海,
 the Pacific (Ocean) 太平洋, the Atlantic (Ocean)
 大西洋, the Hsisha Islands 西沙群岛, the Tienshan Mountains 天山, the Himalayas 喜马拉雅山。
 - 2) 在含有普通名词的专有名词前
 - a) 某些国名前

the People's Republic of China 中华人民共和国, the Soviet Union 苏联, the United States of America 美国, the Philippines 菲律宾, the Sudan 苏丹.

- b) 某些机关团体等组织名称前
 the National People's Congress 全国人民代表大会,
 the State Council 国务院, the Ministry of Foreign
 Trade 对外贸易部, the Evergreen People's Commune
 四季青人民公社, the Loyang Tractor Plant 洛阳拖拉机厂, the United Nations 联合国.
- c) 朝代、时代的名称前
 the Tang dynasty 唐朝, the Warring States period
 战国时代.
- 3) 在某些建筑物的名称前
 the National Art Gallery 中国美术馆, the Great Wall
 长城, the Peking Zoo 北京动物园, the Museum of
 Chinese History 中国历史博物馆.
- 4) 在报纸、杂志、旅馆等名称前
 the People's Daily 《人民日报》, the Red Flag 《红旗》,
 the Peking Hotel 北京饭店.
- 5) 在姓名复数形式前,指一家人.

 The Lius have moved to Tientsin. 刘家已经搬到天 津去住了.

The Greens came to China for a visit last year. 格林一家去年来中国访问过。

- 3.6 抽象名词和物质名词前冠词的用法
- 1) 抽象名词和物质名词表示一般概念时,前面通常不用 冠词,但特指时,则须用定冠词.试比较;

War is *the* continuation of politics. 战爭是政治 的继续.

Our battalion fought north and south during the War of Liberation. 我们这个营在解放战爭时期转战南北.

He is fond of music. 他喜欢音乐.

Did you like *the* music of the film? 你喜欢这个 影片的音乐吗?

Science is making rapid progress in China. 在中国科学正在飞速发展。

Physics is the science of matter and energy. 物理 个学是研究物质和能量的科学.

China is rich in oil. 中国石油丰富,

The oil produced in Takang is of first-rate quality. 大港油田生产的石油质量是头等的.

2) 抽象名词和物质名词如果具体化,表示一个具体情况或动作或某一类物质时,前面可用不定冠词.如:

It is a great joy to live in New China 生活在新中国真幸福.

Yang Tzu-jung has an ardent love for the people and a deep hatred for the enemy. 杨子荣热爱人民, 痛恨敌人.

Mao-tai is a famous Chinese liquor. 茅台是一种中国的名酒.

She built a fire. 她生了个火.

Have a smoke?

- No, thanks. I gave up smoking long ago.

- ---抽支烟吧?
- ——谢谢,我早戒烟了,
- 3.7 不用冠词的场合
- 1) 专有名词、抽象名词和物质名词前一般不用冠词. 如: Canada 加拿大, Japanese 日语, love 愛, hatred 恨, glass 玻璃, water 水。
- 2) 名词前已有作定语用的 this, that, my, your, whose, some, any, no, each, every 等代词时, 不用冠词. 如:

That is my cap. 那是我的帽子.

She is in charge of this workshop. 她负责这个车间.

3) 季节、月份、星期几等名称前,一般不用冠词. 如: Spring has come. 春天来了.

In autumn 1927, Chairman Mao led the Autumn Harvest Uprising. 一九二七年秋天,毛主席领导了 秋收起义.

The Long March began in October 1934. 长征于→ 九三四年十月开始。

We have mathematics on Monday. 我们星期一有数学课.

- 〔注〕 季节前有时也用冠词. 如: in the spring 在春季. 当然也可以说 in spring.
- 4) 复数名词表示某一类人或事物时,不用冠词. 如: They are workers. 他们是工人. We are soldiers. 我们是军人.

- (单数名词则用 a,不用 the, 如: He is a worker, 他是 (一个)工人, I am a soldier, 我是 (一个) 军人,)
- 5) 称呼语前面不用冠词,表示头衔和职务(如果这种职务只有一人担任)的名词的前面也常不用冠词,如:

What does this word mean, Father? 这个词是什么意思,爸爸?

He is secretary of the Party branch. 他是党支部书记.

This is a portrait of Comrade Hua Kuo-feng, Chairman of the Chinese Communist Party. 这是中国 共产党主席华国锋同志的像.

- 6) 在某些固定词组里,名词之前常不用冠词.如: by air 乘飞机, at night 夜间, in fact 事实上, in danger 在危险中, after school 放学后, at home 在 家中, in town 在城里, to go to school 上学去, to go to bed 去睡觉, to go to class 去上课, from door to door 挨门挨戶, from morning till night 从早到 瞭.
- 7) 三餐饭的名称前,常不用冠词.如:

Have you had breakfast? 你吃过早饭了吗?

After lunch we usually have a nap. 午饭后我们一般都睡午觉.

What did you have for supper? 你晚饭吃什么了?

8) 球类运动、棋类游戏等名词前不用冠词.

My younger brother likes to play table tennis. 我 弟弟喜欢打乒乓球.

Let's go and watch them play chess. 让我们去看他

们下棋去.

9) 节目、假日等名称之前不用冠词. 如:

New Year's Day 元旦 National Day 国庆节 May Day 五一劳动节 Children's Day 儿童节

10) 报纸和文章的标题常常省去冠词. 如:

Letter from Peking: Women in Red Star Commune «北京来信: 红星公社的妇女». (文章标题, letter 之 前省去了不定冠词 a.)

Bosses Force Deadlock on Pay Increase Talks 老板们使要求增加工资的谈判陷于僵局. (报纸标题, bosses 前省去 the, deadlock 前省去 a, pay increase talks 前省去 the.)

第四章 代词

一、概说

4. 1 概说

- 1) 定义 代词 (pronoun) 是代替名词的词.
- 2) 代词在句子中的功用 a) 和名词一样,可作主语、 宾语和表语. b) 有些代词和形容词一样,可作定语. 如:
 - a) I am reading The State and Revolution. 我正在读《国家与革命》. (作主语)

This is John Smith speaking. (打电话用语)我是约翰·史密斯. (作主语)

Can I help you? 我能帮你的忙吗?(作宾语)

That's all. 完了. (作表语)

b) His father is a stockman. 他父亲是个饲养员. (作 定语)

All reactionaries are paper tigers. 一切反动派都是纸老虎. (作定语)

- 3) 格的变化 有些代词有格的变化. 如: I 我 (主格), me 我 (宾格), who 谁 (主格), whom 谁 (宾格). 某些代词有所有格. 如: whose 谁的, other's 别人的, somebody's 某人的, one's 一个人的.
- 4) 单复数形式 有些代词有单数和复数形式 少数 代词的复数形式和名词的复数形式的变化规则相同 如:

one — ones, other — others. 其他如人称代词、物主代词、自身代词和指示代词等, 其复数形式与此不同, 须个别记忆.

- 5) 有或沒有冠词 代词之前一般不用冠词,只有少数例外,如: the other, the others, a few, a little 等.
 - 4. 2 种类 英语有下列几种代词:
 - 1) 人称代词 (personal pronoun)
 - a) 主格: I, he, she, it, we, you, they.
 - b) 宾格: me, him, her, it, us, you, them.
 - 2) 物主代词 (possessive pronoun)
 - a) 形容词性物主代词 my, his, her, its, our, your, their.
 - b) 名词性物主代词 mine, his, hers, its (不常用), ours, yours, theirs.
- 3) 自身代词 (self-pronoun): myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves, oneself.
- 4) 相互代词 (reciprocal pronoun): each other, one another.
- 5) 指示代词 (demonstrative pronoun): this, that, these, those, such, same.
- 6) 疑问代词 (interrogative pronoun): who, whom, whose, which, what.
- 7) 关系代词 (relative pronoun): who, whom, whose, which, that.
- 8) 不定代词 (indefinite pronoun): some, something, somebody, someone, any, anything, anybody, anyone, no, nothing, nobody, no one, every, everything, everybody, everyone, each, much, many, little, a little, few, a few, other, another, all, none, one, both, either, neither.

二、人称代词

4. 3 概说 表示"我"、"你"、"他"、"我们"、"你们"、"他们"等的词、叫做人称代词。

人称代词有人称、数和格之分:

数	单	数	复	数
人称格	主 格	宾 格	主 格	宾 格
第一人称	I 我	me	we 我们	us
.第二人称	you 你	you	you 你们	you
第三人称	he 他 she 她 it 它	him her it	他们 they 她们 它们	them

[注] 第三人称单数人称代词分阳性、阴性、中性,分别为: he (him), she (her), it (it). 复数只有一个形式 they (them), 不分性别,

4. 4 人称代词的用法

- 1) 人称代词主格的用法
- a) 作主语

I am a cook (炊事员).
You are a teacher(教师).
He is a barber (理发员).
She is a nurse(护士).
It is a cart (大车).

We are cooks.

You are teachers.

They are barbers.

They are nurses.

They are carts.

b) 作表语

It's I. 是我.

Oh, it's you. 噢,是你.

[注一] 第一人称单数人称代词 I (我)永远要大写. (见上面例句)

[注二] 口语习惯上不大说 It's I (he, she等), 而说 It's me (him, her 等).

- 2) 人称代词宾格的用法
- a) 作及物动词的宾语

Our squad leader is always ready to help us.

我们班长总是愿意帮助我们.

b) 作介词的宾语

The League Secretary had a talk with me last night. 团支书昨晚和我谈了一次话.

Aunt Li took good care of us. 李大妈无微不至地 关怀我们

- 3) 人称代词的其他用法 各人称代词除按照 自身的人称、数和格使用外,有下列一些特殊用法:
- a) 报刊的编辑和文章的作者, 在发表观点时, 常用 we 代替 I (同样地, 用 our 代替 my), 如:

We believe that China will make still greater progress in shipbuilding. 我们相信中国的造船业将会有更大的发展。

In our opinion this is the best film of the year. 我们认为这是今年最好的影片.

b) 用 she 来代替国家、城市、船舶、飞机等,以表示亲切和爱抚,如:

That's the picture of the *Tungfeng*; she is a 10,000-ton class ocean-going freighter. 那是万吨远洋货轮东风号的照片.

c) it 有时可用来代替小孩 (child) 和婴儿 (baby),如: The child smiled when it saw its mother. 小孩见到 母亲就笑了.

d) they 可用来代替一般的人,特别在"they say"中比较常用,如:

They say there's going to be another good harvest this year. 人们说今年又是个丰收年.

三、物主代词

4. 5 概说 表示所有关系的代词叫做物主代词,也可叫做代词所有格。

物主代词有形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词两种, 现列表分述如下:

1) 形容词性物主代词

人称	单	数	复	数
第一人称 .	my		ou	r
第二人称	you	r	yo	ur
第三人称	his, her,	its	the	eir

2) 名词性物主代词

人称 数	单	数	复	数
第一人称	mine		ou	ırs
第二人称	yours		yo	urs
第三人称	his, hers,	its	the	eirs

- 4.6 物主代词的用法
- 1) 形容词性物主代词用作定语

I love my work in the commune. 我喜欢我在公社 的工作。 How many students are there in his (her) class? 他 (她) 班上有多少学生?

There are many old workers in our workshop. 我们车间有许多老工人.

I saw a film last Saturday. Its title was Guerrillas on the Plains. 我上星期六看了一个电影,名字叫《平原游击队》.

Cadre-students at the May 7th school built their own houses. 五·七干校的干部学员自己盖房子.

- 2) 名词性物主代词用作主语、宾语和表语
- a) 用作主语

Our room is on the first floor, and theirs is on the second. 我们的房间在一层,他们的在二层.

Ours is a socialist country under the dictatorship of the proletariat. 我们的国家是一个无产阶级专政的社会主义国家.

- b) 用作宾语
 - I didn't borrow her dictionary. I borrowed his. 我 沒有借她的字典, 我借的是他的.
- c) 用作表语

These tools are ours. 这些工具是我们的.

[注] "of + 名词性物主代词"和 2.12 的 "of + 名词所有格"的用法 完全一样. 如:

A friend of mine 我的一个朋友 (表示部分观念, 意即我有不少朋友, 他(她)是其中之一)

This lovely child of yours 你的这个可爱的孩子 (有感情色彩)

四、自身代词

4.7 概说 表示反射(指一个动作回射到该动作执行 者本身)或强调(即用来加强名词或一代词的语气)的代词叫 做自身代词, 其形式如下:

人称数	单	数	复	数
第一人称	mys	elf	ourselv	ves
第二人称	you	rself	yourse	lves
第三人称	himself, he	erself, itself	themse	elves

[注] 第一、二人称自身代词由形容词性物主代词加 -self (复数加 -selves)构成. 第三人称自身代词由人称代词宾格形式加 -self (复数加 -selves)构成. 所有自身代词的重音均在 -self (或 -selves) 这个音节上。

4.8 自身代词的用法

1) 在旬中作宾语,表示动作回到动作执行者的本身. 如; Please help yourself to some tea. 请自己用茶. (作 help 的宾语)

The girl is too young to look after herself. 这女孩太小,还不能照顾自己. (作 look after 的宾语). He was always ready to help others; he never thought of himself. 他总是帮助别人,从不想到自己. (作 thought of 的宾语)

2) 在句中作名词或代词的同位语,用来加强名词或代词的语气,作"亲自"、"本人"解. 在句中它可置于名词、代词之后,也可置于句子末尾. 如;

If you want to know the taste of a pear, you must change the pear by eating it *yourself*. 你要知道 梨子的滋味, 你就得变革梨子, 亲口吃一吃.

I fixed the window *myself*. 这窗戶是我自己装的. We *ourselves* will build the workshop. 我们自己来意文个车间.

五、相互代词

4.9 概说 表示相互关系的代词叫做相互代词. 相互代词的形式如下:

通	格	(包括主格和宾格)	所	有	格
		h other 互相 another 互相	1 .		彼此的 's 彼此的

【注】 在实际运用中, each other 和 one another 没有什么区别。

4. 10 相互代词的用法

1) 作宾语

Do you often see one another? 你们彼此常见面吗? New and veteran cadres learn from each other. 新老干部相互学习.

The just struggles of the people of all countries support each other. 全世界各国人民的正义斗争都是互相支持的.

2) 作定语时须用所有格

We are interested in one another's work. 我们关心 彼此的工作.

The students corrected each other's mistakes in their homework. 学生相互改作业中的错误.

We have always maintained that countries should respect each other's sovereignty and territorial integrity. 我们一直认为各国之间应当互相尊重主权和领土的完整.

3) each 和 other 有时可分开用

Each tried to persuade the other to stay at home.

两个人都彼此劝说对方留在家里.

六、指示代词

4. 11 概说 表示"这个"、"那个"、"这些"、"那些"等指示概念的代词叫做指示代词。

指示代词有: this 这个, that 那个, these 这些, those 那些, such 如此的, 如此的事物, same 同样的, 同样的事物, it 那个, 这个.

4. 12 指示代词 this, these, that, those 在句中的功用 指示代词 this, these, that, those 在句中的用法相当于名词和形容词,可作主语、表语、实语和定语. 如:

This is a plane. 这是一架飞机、(作主语)

Are those trucks? —— Yes, they are. 那些是卡车吗? —— 是卡车· (作主语)

How do you like these? 你喜欢这些吗? (作宾语)
This book is about Chinese traditional medicine. 这
本书是关于中医的. (作定语)

4. 13 指示代词 this, that, these, those 的一般用法

和某些特殊用法

1) This (these) 一般用来指在时间或空间上较近的事物或人, that (those) 则指时间或空间上较远的事物或人. 如:

This is a sickle and that is an axe. 这是一把镰刀, 那是一把斧子.

An old worker came to speak to us *that* day. 那 一天, 一位老工人来给我们作过报告.

We are busy these days. 这些天我们很忙.

In those pre-liberation days the workers had a hard time. 在解放前那些日子里,工人们的生活很苦.

2) 有时 that 和 those 指前面讲到过的事物, this 和 these 则指下面将要讲到的事物. 如:

I had a bad cold. That's why I didn't come. 我 伤风很厉害, 所以我沒有来.

She has a firm proletarian stand, and *that* is the most important thing. 她有坚定的无产阶级立场, 而这点是最重要的.

What I want to say is *this:* Pronunciation is very important in learning English. 我所要说的是: 语音在英语学习中非常重要.

Chairman Mao honoured Liu Hu-lan with these words: "A great life! A glorious death!" 毛主席 用下面的话表彰刘胡兰:"牛的伟大,死的光荣."

this 和 these 也指前面叙述过的事物,但往往是为了强调,如:

Countries want independence, nations want liberation, and the people want revolution —— this has become

an irresistible historical current. 国家要独立,民族要解放,人民要革命,已成为不可抗拒的历史潮流.

This will do. 这样行.

3) 有时为了避免重复提到过的名词,常可用 that 或 those 代替. 如:

The climate of Shenyang is just as good as that of Peking. 沈阳的气候跟北京的一样好. (that 代替 climate)

The commune's grain output of 1977 was double that of 1970. 这个公社一九七七年的粮食产量比一九七〇年增加一倍. (that 代替 grain output)

Television sets made in Nanking are just as good as those made in Shanghai. 南京出产的电视机和上海的一样好. (those 代替 television sets)

4) this 和 that 有时作状语用,表示"程度",意谓"这么"和"那么". 如:

The book is about this thick. 那本书大约有这么厚.

I don't want that much. 我不要那么多.

4. 14 It It 指人时亦可作为指示代词看待. 指示代词 it 在汉语中不必译出.

Who is it? —— It's me. 是谁? —— 是我.

Oh, it's you, Lao Wang. 哦, 是你呀, 老王.

- 4. 15 such, same Such (如此的) 和 same (同样的) 也是指示代词,其单、复数的形式相同,它们在句中可作:
 - 1) 定语

The foreign visitors said they had never seen such a beautiful city before. 外宾说他们从来沒有看过这样美丽的城市。

We are not talking about the *same* thing. 我们谈的不是一回事.

[注] such 作定语时,它所修饰的名词之前如有不定冠词,这个不定冠词 应放在 such 之后,如上面第一例.

Such 作定语时,在它所修饰的名词后面有时跟 as,如: There is no such thing as a "good capitalist". 决 沒有"好资本家"这么回事.

2) 相当于名词,在句中可作主语等成分.

Such were his words. 这就是他讲的话. (作主语)
The same can be said of the other article. 另一篇
文章也是同样情况. (作主语)

【注】 注意在 same 之前必须用冠词 the.

七、疑问代词

- 4. 16 概说 疑问代词有 who (谁, 主格), whom (谁, 宾格), whose (谁的, 所有格), what (什么)和 which (哪个, 哪些)等.
- 4. 17 疑问代词用于特殊疑问句中 疑问代词 般都 放在句首, 幷在句中作为某一句子成分, 如:

Who is going to speak to us tomorrow? 明天谁来 跟我们讲话? (who 作主语)

Who told you so? 是谁告诉你的? (who 作主语) Whom are you talking about? 你们在说谁? (whom

作宾语, 但在句首时口语中常用 who 代替 whom.) Whose umbrella is this? 这是谁的伞? (whose 作定语)

What is that? 那是什么? (what 作表语)

What did he say? 他说什么? (what 作宾语)

Which is yours, the blue pen or the red one? 蓝 笔和红笔哪一支是你的? (which 作主语)

[分] 平下联岛华河岛东苏田丛 可名式 15 10 15 10

【注一】 关于疑问代词的各种用法,可参看 17. 10-17. 12.

[注二] 疑问代词 who, what, which 等后面加单词 ever, 可用来强调 语气,表达说话人的各种感情. 如:

What ever do you want? 你到底想要什么?

Who ever is she looking for? 她究竟是在找谁?

【注三】 which 表示在一定数目(或范围)之内的选择, what 则没有这种限制, 如:

What do you usually have for lunch? 你们午饭通常吃些什么? Which do you prefer, rice or buns? 米饭和馒头你爱吃哪个? Which of you comrades come from the Northeast? 你们同志们中间谁是东北人?

4. 18 **疑问代词可以引导一个间接疑问句** 间接疑问句在句中可作主语、宾语、表语等. 另一方面,这个疑问代词本身在间接疑问句中又担任一定的句子成分. 如:

Who will be in charge of the work is still not decided. 谁将负责这项工作,现在还没有决定,(疑问代词 who 引导一个主语从句,它本身又在从句中作主语.)

Do you know what his name is? 你知道他叫什么 名字吗? (疑问代词 what 引导一个宾语从句,而 它本身在从句中又作表语。)

【注一】 what 所引导的名词性从句 (即主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句) 有时不是间接疑问句. 如: What he says is quite true. 他讲的话很对. (what 相当于 that which. 它引导一个主语从句,这个从句不是间接疑问句.)

We must do what the Party tells us to do. 我们必须按照党的 话办事。(what 引导一个宾语从句, 但这个从句也不是间接疑问 句.)

[注二] whatever, whoever, whichever 等词引导名词性从句。(也可引导表示让步的状语从句,见 15.64 和 15.71.)如:

Chang Szu-teh always did whatever the Party asked of him. 党要张思德干什么,他就干什么. (whatever 引导一个宾语从句,并在从句中作宾语.)

I've got plenty of books left. Whoever wants an extra copy can get one from me. 我这还剩下好多书, 谁还想再要一本可来拿. (whoever 引导一个主语从句, 并在从句中作主语.)

八、关系代词

- 4. 19 两种可用来引导从句并将从句和主句连接起来的代词 这样的代词一方面在从句中用作句子成分,可作主语、宾语、定语等;另一方面又起连词的作用. 这样的代词有关系代词和疑问代词两种. (关于疑问代词,见 4. 18.)
- 4. 20 关系代词概说 关系代词有 who, whose, whom, that, which 等,用来引导定语从句。它们在定语从句中可作主语、宾语、定语或表语;另一方面它们又代表主句中为定语从句所修饰的那个名词或代词(这样的名词和代词叫做先行词).如:

The man who is talking with Wang is an eye specialist. 和王谈话的那个人是个眼科大夫. (关系代词 who 在从句中作主语,它的先行词是 man) He is the comrade whom you have been looking for. 他就是你要找的那位同志. (关系代词 whom 在从

句中作宾语,它的先行词是 comrade, whom 在口语中一般略去)

The old poor peasant whose son is in the PLA navy is the stockman of the production team. 儿子在人民解放军海军工作的那位老贫农是生产队的饲养员. (关系代词 whose 在从句中作定语,先行词为peasant.)

The film which I saw last night is about a young teacher. 我昨天看的那部电影是关于一个年轻教师的. (关系代词 which 在从句中作宾语, 先行词 为 film, which 在口语中一般省略.)

This is the plane that will fly to Tokyo in the afternoon. 这是下午要飞往东京的飞机. (关系代词 that 在从句中作主语, 先行词为 plane.)

[注] 关于每个关系代词的用法, 详见 18.18 的 1).

九、不定代词

4. 21 概说 不是指明代替任何特定名词(或<u>形容词</u>)的代词叫做不定代词。不定代词有:

som	e	一些(可数或不可数) 🔨 🦴
	somebody	某人
	someone	某人
	something	某物,某事
any		一些,任何(可数或不可数)
	anybody	任何人
	anyone	任何人

anything	任何事物		
no	无(可数或不可数)		
nobody	无人		
no one	无一人		
nothing	无物		
all	全体,全部		
both	两个		
neither	沒有人或物(指两个当中)		
none	沒有人或物(指两个以上)		
either	任何一个(指两个当中)		
each	每个		
every	每个		
everybod <u>y</u>	每人,大家,人人		
everyone	毎人		
everything	每一个事物,一切		
other(s)	另一个(些)		
another	另外一个,又一个		
much	很多(不可数)		
many	很多(可数)		
few	很少(可数)		
a few	一些,儿个(可数)		
little	很少(不可数)		
a little	一些(不可数)		
one	一个(人或物)		

- **4.** 22 不定代词的用法 不定代词大都可代替 名词 和形容词,在句中可用作主语、宾语、表语和定语 如;
 - 1) 作主语

Both of them are Party members. 他们两人都是党员.

Is everybody here? 都到了吗?

2) 作宾语

- I know *little* about the novel. 关于这本小说我知道的很少.
- I am speaking for myself, not for others. 我只代表自己,不代表別人发言.
- I was interested in everything that the PLA man told me. 我对于这个解放军战士告诉我的一切都 感兴趣.

3) 作表语

That's all for today. Class is dismissed. 今天就讲这一些. 现在下课.

It's too much. 太多了.

-4) 作定语

Study well and make progress every day. 好好学习, 天天向上.

He has some English books. 他有一些英文书.

China will become a powerful modern socialist country in another twenty years. 再过二十年中国将成为社会主义的现代化强国。

〔注〕 有些不定代词也可用作同位语和状语. 如:

Wang and Li both made good progress. 王和李两人都有很大进步. (同位语)

They all went to the Zoo. 他们都去动物园了. (同位语)

Are you any good at mathematics? 你数学好吗? (状语)

The meeting lasted some two hours. 会议进行了两个小时左右. (状语)

十、各个不定代词用法举例

4. 23 some 一些,某些,某个 可代替名词和形容词,常用在肯定句中作主语、宾语、定语等 作定语时,它所修饰的名词可以是可数名词,也可以是不可数名词;可数名词可以是单数或复数,复数表示"某些",单数表示"某个".如:

Some are bus drivers, others are bus conductors. 有 的是公共汽车司机,有的是售票员. (作主语) Have you any French books? — Yes, I have some. 你有法语书吗? —— 是的,我有一些. (作宾语)

- l am going to fetch some water. 我去打点水去. (作 定语)
- I have read that in *some* magazine. 这个我在某一本杂志上读过 (作定语)
- 【注一〕 some 也可用于表示请求的疑问句中. 如:

Will you give me some paper? 请你给我一些纸好吗?

- [注二] some 也可以用作状语, 意思相当于 about (大约). 如:
 - I waited some twenty minutes. 我等了大约二十分钟.
 - The mill has some 4,000 workers and staff. 这个工厂大约有四千职工.
- 4. 24 any 一些,任何 可以代替名词或形容词. 常用在否定或疑问句中,也可用于条件状语从句中.作定语时,它所修饰的名词可以是可数名词或不可数名词,可数名词也可以是单数或复数(一般应用复数). 如:

Have you got any matches? 你有火柴吗? (作定语)

Is there *any* ink in your pen? 你的笔里有墨水吗? (作定语)

I haven't any brothers. 我沒有兄弟 (作定语)

If there is any difficulty, let me know. 有困难就告诉我. (作定语)

〔注一〕 不定代词 any 用在肯定句中时, 意思是"任何的". 如:

You may come at any time; I'll be in the office the whole morning. 你任何时候来都行,我整个上午都将在办公室里.

She is younger than *any* other comrade in the workshop. 她比 车间里其他同志都年轻.

You must find a dictionary, any dictionary will do. 你必须弄到一本辞典,任何辞典都行

[注二] any 可用作状语,表示程度. 如:

Is she any better today? 她今天好一点吗?

[注三] some 和 any 的区别: some 多用于肯定句, any 多用于否定和 每问句, 如:

I am looking for *some* paper clips. 我在找回形针. (肯定)

Have you *any* paper clips? 你有回形针吗?(疑问)

I haven't any paper clips.

我没回形针. (否定)

但是,如果说话人希望得到肯定的回答,这时疑问句中可用 some; some 还可用于表示请求和邀请的疑问句,如:

Didn't you buy *some* paper clips the other day? 你那天不 是买了回形针吗?

Have you some envelopes?你有信封吧!(说话人肯定听话人有) Will you lend me some books,please? 请借我几本书吧! Would you like some sweets? 请吃糖果. (邀请)

4. 25 **no** 无 只能作定语, 修饰不可数名词和可数名词的单数或复数 如:

There are no beggars in New China. 新中国沒有乞丐. There is no need to hurry him. It's still early. 不要催他,还早哩.

She knows no Italian. 她不懂意大利语.

[注] no 在下面句子中用作状语:

He's feeling no worse today. 他今天病情没有坏. I shall trouble you no further today. 今天不多麻烦你了.

4. 26 all 全体,所有 在句中可作主语、宾语、表语、 定语或同位语: 代表或修饰可数名词时,指两个以上的人或 事物,也可代表或修饰不可数名词. 如:

All were present at the meeting. 全都到会了. (作主语)

All of them have pledged themselves to finish their work ahead of schedule. 他们都保证提前完成工作. (作主语)

I have forgotten all about it. 我全给忘了。(作宾语) That's all. 完了 (作表语)

He told me all about his visit to Tachai. 他把他在大寨的所见所闻都告诉我了。(作宾语)

All workers like to help the peasants. 所有的工人都愿意帮助农民. (作定语)

All the workers are working with great enthusiasm. 所有的工人都正以很大干劲工作着。(作定语,注意 all 须放在冠词 the 之前.)

All power in the People's Republic of China belongs to the people 中华人民共和国的一切权力属于人民、(作定语)

We all agree to put off the meeting till Saturday. 我们都同意把会议延期到星期六. (作 we 的同位语)

[注一] all 作主语表示"每件事"或"整个事物"时,后面动词用单数;表示 "所有的人或物"时后面动词用复数,如:

All I know is that his father joined the revolution in Yenan. 我只知道他父亲是在延安参加革命的.

All agree that comrade Wang did a good job. 大家都同意王 同志做得很好.

All are welcome. 所有的人都受欢迎.

All participate in collective productive labour in our school. 我们学校大家都参加集体生产劳动.

[注二] all 也可用作状语,作"全","十分"解,或只是为了加强语气. 如: Everything is all right. 一切都很好.

There are trees all along the road. 沿路都有树.

It ended all too soon. 结束得太早了.

I feel all the better for the walk. 散步之后我觉得就是好些.

4. 27 both 全 指两个人或事物. 和 all 一样,可用作主语、宾语、定语或同位语. 如:

Both would like to have a try. 两人都要试一试. (作主语)

We asked both to put forward their suggestions. 我们要两人都提出建议 (作宾语)

Both suggestions are good. 两种建议都很好. (作 定语)

They both skate well. 他们两人都很会溜冰。(作 they 的同位语)

- [注] 关于连词 both ... and (和) 的用法, 见 15. 18.
- 4. 28 none 无人或无物 和 all 相反,和 no one, not any 同义,但 none 的用法相当于名词。指不可数名词时,它后面用动词单数;指可数名词时,它后面可用动词复数,也

可用动词单数,如:

None of the problems is easy to solve. 这些问题沒有一个是容易解决的. (作主语)

- I know *none* of them. 他们我一个都不认识. (作宾语)
- [注一] none 在下面的句子中用作状语: It's none too good. 它并不怎么好。

I was none the worse for it. 我并没有因此而感觉不好.

[注二] all 表示"三个或三个以上都…", none 表示"三个或三个以上都不…". 所以汉语的"我们(三人以上)都不去",译成英语, 必须说 None of us will go. 而不能说 We all will not go. 或 All of us will not go. 又如:

All of us took part in the sports meet. 我们都参加了运动会. None of them went to town yesterday. 他们昨天谁也没进城.

4. 29 either 两个中间的任何一个,这个或那个 可作 主语、宾语和定语. 如:

The two of them are good, trustworthy comrades. Either will be able to fulfil the task with credit. 他们两位都是很好的可靠的同志,哪一位都能够很好的完成任务. (作主语)

Both workers are experienced. You can send either of them to help with the experiment. 这两个工人都很有经验,你可以派其中任何一位去协助试验. (作宾语)

- I believe either method will work. 我看两种方法中的任何一种都行。(作定语)
- [注一] either 在下面句子中作状语, 和 not 一起, 表示"也不":

 I don't like the blue one, and I don't like the yellow one, either, 我不喜欢蓝的、黄的我也不喜欢。
- [注二] 连词 either ... or (非此...即彼) 的用法参阅 15.22 和 18.2 的 2).

4. 30 **neither 两者之间一个也不是** neither 是 either 的否定形式,可作主语、宾语和定语 如:

Neither is correct. 两个都不对. (作主语)

Neither of them wants to stop for a rest. 他们两个人谁也不愿意停下来休息 (作主语)

- Did yon see Hsu and Chen? No, I saw neither of them. 你看见徐和陈了吗? —— 沒有,我哪一个也沒有看见 (作宾语)
- I went to see Chang and Wang yesterday, but neither one was at home. 昨天我去访问张和王, 但两个人都不在家. (作定语)
- [注一] neither 表示"两个都不…", either 表示"两个之中任何一个"。 如:

Neither of them knows Japanese.

他们两人都不懂日语.

Either Li or Wang knows English.

王和李两人中有一个储英语,

- [注二] both 表示"两个都", neither 表示"两个都不". 汉语的"我们两个都去了", 应译为"Both of us went." 如果是"我们两都没去", 则不可译为 "Both of us did not go.", 而应译为 "Neither of us went." 再如: Both my sisters are textile workers (我的两个姐姐都是纺织女工). Neither of my sisters is married (我的两个姐姐都还没结婚).
- [注三] 关于连词 neither ... nor (既不...也不) 的用法, 见 15.34 和 18.2 的 1).
- 4. 31 each 每个、各、各自的 指每一个人或事物的个别情况,甚至指这些个别情况互不相同。它在句中可作主语、宾语、定语和同位语。如:

Each of them fulfilled his duty. 他们每一个人都完成了任务, (作主语)

- League Secretary Yang had a talk with each of them. 团支部杨书记和他们每个人都谈了话. (作宾语)
- Our factory has overfulfilled its production plan each month this year. 我们工厂今年月月超额完成生产计划. (作定语)
- The nurse gave the children two apples each. 阿姨给了每个小孩两个苹果. (作 the children 的同位语)
- 4. 32 every 每个,每一的,一切的 有"全体"的意思, 和 all (全体,一切)的意义相近,只能作定语。
 - Every minute is important to us. 每一分钟对我们都是重要的.
 - Every year millions of people visit Shaoshan, the birthplace of Chairman Mao. 每年有成百万人参观毛主席的诞生地韶山.
 - There are TV stations in every big city in China now. 现在中国每个大城市都有电视台.
 - 【注一〕 every 和 each 的比较. every 只能作定语, each 能作主语、宾语、定语、同位语等 (见 4.31 和 4.32 的例句). each 可表示两个或更多的人, every 一般超过两个人或物, 如:

Two boys entered. Each wore a red scarf. 两个男孩走进来,每 · 人戴一条红领巾.

- Every student has a copy of the new textbook. 每个学生有一本新课本.
- 【注二】 注意 every 所构成的词组: every other day 每隔一天(或: 其它任何一天), every three weeks 每隔两周, 每三周.
- 4. 33 other (两个中的) 另一个,另一些,其他的 相当于名词或形容词,在句中作主语、宾语、定语等. 相当于名

词时,有复数形式 others. 还有所有格形式 other's 和 others'. other 之前常用定冠词 the.

He has two nephews. One is a PLA man, the other a steel worker. 他有两个侄儿. 一个是解 放军战士,另一个是炼钢工人. (作主语)

Some went to the Palace Museum, others visited the Museum of Chinese History. 有的人去参观故宫博物馆,有的去参观中国历史博物馆.(作主语)

I have two pictures of the West Lake here. You have seen one. Now I'll show you the other. 我这里有两张西湖的照片. 有一张你已经看见过. 现在我给你看另一张. (作宾语)

Over ten million school leavers have gone to the mountains and other rural areas. 有一千多万知 识青年上山下乡. (作定语)

The other books are all about steel-making. 別的 书都是关于炼钢的. (作定语)

4. 34 another 与某一个不同的另一个,又一个 是由不定冠词 an 和 other 合并构成,因此,它只能代替或修饰可数的单数名词,前面不再用冠词.

This cap is too small for me. Please show me another. 这顶帽子我戴太小, 请另给我一顶看看。 (作宾语)

Would you like *another* cup of tea? 你还要喝一杯 茶吗?(作定语)

The Red Flag People's Commune had another good

harvest this year. 红旗人民公社今年叉获丰收, (作定语)

The students will stay in the factory for *another* ten days. 学生在工厂还要呆十天. (作定语)

- I could do with *another* helping of rice. 我还可以 再来一份米饭. (作定语)
- **4.** 35 much 很**多** (不可数) 相当于名词、数词和形容词,在句中可作主语、宾语或定语. 如:

Much has been done to increase cotton output. 已 经作了许多工作来提高棉花的产量. (作主语)

He didn't say *much*, but every word was to the point. 他的话不多,但每句话都中肯. (作宾语)

There is not *much* water left in the thermos flask. 热水瓶里的水不多了. (作定语)

【注】 much 在下面例子中用作状语:

I like the film very much. 我非常喜欢这部电影.

He doesn't swim much. 他不常游泳.

This lesson is much easier than the last. 这一课比前一课容易得多。

4. 36 many 很多(可数) 用法和 much 相同, 在句子 里可作主语、宾语、定语等.

Many of us are from the rural areas. 我们当中有很多人来自农村. (作主语)

Before liberation in our factory no worker had a bicycle or a sewing machine, now many have both. 解放前我们工厂沒有一个工人有自行车或缝纫机,现在许多人两样都有·(作主语)

How many do you want? 你要多少? (作宾语)
There are many cars in the streets. 街上有很多汽车. (作定语)

[注] much 用于不可数名词,如在句中作主语,后面动词用单数.many 用于可数名词,后面动词用复数.如:

There are not many mistakes in his exercise. 他的练习里没多少错.

Much of what he said is true. 他讲的有道理.

Hsiao Ma has made *much* progress this year. 小马今年有很大 进步.

4. 37 a few 少数几个 (可数); few 很少几个 (可数) a few 表示肯定观念, 意思是"虽少但有一些"; few 表示否定观念, 意思是"不多", "沒有多少". 两者均可作主语、实语、定语等. 如:

Few of them know Spanish. 他们当中很少有人懂 西班牙语. (few 作主语)

A few of them know French. 他们当中有几个人懂 法语. (a few 作主语)

We know few of them. 他们当中的人我们认得很少. (few 作宾语)

He made very few mistakes in the translation exercise. 他翻译练习里的错误很少. (few 作定语)

Tomatoes are only *a few* cents a catty in Peking in the summer. 北京夏天的西红柿 只几分钱一斤· (作定语)

Few labouring people could afford to send their children to school before liberation 解放前,很少劳动人民供得起子女上学. (few 作定语)

4. 38 a little 一些 (不可数); little 很少 (不可数) a little 表示肯定观念; little 表示否定概念. 两者的差别和 a few 与 few 的差别相似. 在句中可用作主语、宾语、定语等. 如:

He says *little* but does much. 他说的少做的多· (little 作宾语)

I know *a little* about the play. 关于这个剧本,我 稍有所知. (a little 作宾语)

The commune members went on with their work after a little rest. 社员们休息一会儿之后继续工作。(a little 作定语)

It hasn't rained for quite some time. There is little water left in the pond. 好久沒下雨, 池子里沒多少水了. (little 作定语)

【注一〕 little 和 a little 在下面句子中用作状语:

You rest too little. 你休息得太少了.

I shall rest a little now. 我现在要歇一会儿了。

This is little better than that. 这个并不比那个好多少:

This is a little better than that. 这个要比那个好一些.

【注二】 日常口语中往往以 hardly any 和 not many 来代替 few, 以 hardly any 和 not much 代替 little. 如:

There are hardly any (或 not many) flies in China's big cities. 中国大城市里几乎没有苍蝇.

Before liberation the poor peasants had hardly any (或 not much) land. 解放前贫农几乎没有土地.

4. 39 one

1) 不定代词 one 指不定人称时, 表示"人", 可译成"人", "一个人"等, 它有自身代词 oneself 和物主代词 one's 等形式. one 和 oneself 在句中作主语或宾语, one's 在句

中作定语. 如:

It is not hard for *one* to do a bit of good. What is hard is to do good all *one's* life. 一个人做点 好事并不难, 难的是一辈子做好事. (one 作 for 的宾语, one's 作定语)

No one can learn a foreign language well without enough practice. 沒有足够的实践,外语是学不好的. (one 作主语)

One of his cousins came to see him today. 他的一位表兄今天来看他. (one 作主语)

2) 不定代词 one 可用来代替前面出现过的可数名词, 以免重复. 它有复数形式 ones, 可以与冠词连用, 可以有 自己的定语. 如:

Please pass me the book, the one on the top shelf. 请把在书架顶上一层的那本书递给我

There are four old machines and nine new ones in the workshop. 车间里有四台旧机器和九台新机器.

- **4.** 40 **复合不定代词** 由 some, any, no, every 加上-body, -one, -thing 构成的不定代词, 叫做复合不定代词.
 - 1) 复合不定代词有
 - a) somebody 某人 someone 某人 something 某物,某事
 - b) anybody 任何人 anyone 任何人 anything 任何事物
 - c) nobody 无一人 no one 无一人 nothing ['nating] 光一物

d) everybody 每人,大家,人人 everything 每一个事物,一切 everyone 每人

- 2) 复合不定代词的用法
- a) 复合不定代词只相当于名词,在句中作主语、宾语和 表语,而不能作定语·如:

Everything is made of elements. 任何东西都是元素构成的 (作主语)

Without a people's army the people have nothing. 沒有一个人民的军队, 便沒有人民的一切. (作宾语)

something 和 anything 的区别与 some 和 any 的区别一样,前者一般用于肯定句,后者一般用于否定句,疑问句或条件状语从句中,如:

Have you anything to say about this question?— No, I haven't anything to say. (或 I have nothing to say.) (Yes, I have something to say.) 关于这个问题, 你有什么话要讲吗?—— 我沒有什么话要讲 (我有话要说.)

She told them something about her work. 她跟他们 谈了一些关于她的工作上的事. (作宾语)

b) 复合不定代词被定语所修饰时,定语则须放在它们的后面. 如:

There is nothing wrong with the lathe. 这个车床沒有毛病.

Is there anything important in today's newspaper? 今天报纸上有什么重要消息吗?

第五章 数词

一、概说

5.1 定义和特征

- 1) 表示 "多少" 和"第几"的词, 叫做数词 (numeral).
- 2) 数词与不定代词相似,其用法或者相当于形容词,或者相当于名词.

5.2 种类

- 1) 基数词 表示"多少"的词叫做基数词 (cardinal numeral). 如: one (一), twenty (二十) 等.
- 2) 序数词 表示 "第几" 的词叫做序数词 (ordinal numeral). 如: first (第一), twentieth (第二十) 等.

二、基数词

5.3 100 以下的基本的基数词

1	one [wan]	7	seven ['sevn]
2	two [tur]	8	eight [eit]
3	three [θriː]	9	nine [nain].
4	four [for]	10	ten [ten]
5	five [faiv]	11	eleven [i'levn]
6	six [siks]	12	twelve [twelv]

13	thirteen ['0ə:'ti:n]	21	twenty-one ['twenti-
			'wʌn]
14	fourteen	30	thirty ['θə:ti]
15	fifteen ['fif'ti:n]	40	forty ['fo:ti]
16	sixteen	50	fifty ['fifti]
17	seventeen	60	sixty
18	eighteen ['ei'tim]	70	seventy
19	nineteen	80	eighty
20	twenty ['twenti]	90	ninety

说明:

- 1) 13—19 皆以后缀 -teen ['tiːn] 结尾,它们都有两个重音 注意 thirteen, fifteen, eighteen 的发音和拼法.
 - 2) 20-90 等十位数的整数均以后缀 -ty [ti] 结尾.
- 3) 十位数和个位数之间须用连字号 "-",如: twenty-one (二十一), fifty-five (五十五), ninety-nine (九十九) 等。

5.4 100 以上的基本的基数词

100 hundred ['handrid]

1,000 thousand ['bauzend]

1,000,000 million ['miljen] 百万

100,000,000 hundred million 一亿

1,000 million (= billion) 十亿

499 four hundred and ninety-nine (101-999 皆如此构成)

3,876 three thousand eight hundred and seventy-six (1001--9999 皆如此构成)

- 57,453 fifty-seven thousand four hundred and fifty-three (10001—99999 皆 如此构成)
- 768,921 seven hundred sixty-eight thousand nine hundred and twenty-one
- 8,641,457 eight million six hundred fortyone thousand four hundred and fifty-seven

50,000,000 fifty million

500,000,000 five hundred million

5,000,000,000 five thousand million (或 five billion)

50,000,000,000 fifty thousand million (或 fifty billion)

说明:

- 1) 100 和 100 以上的基数词须用 hundred, thousand, million, billion 等.
- 2) 十位数与百位数之间有 and. 但也有不用 and 的情况, 如 850 可以读作 eight hundred fifty.
 - 5.5 基数词的用法 基数词在句中可作下列句子成分:
 - 1) 主语

Two plus nine is eleven. 二加九等于十一.

Four times six is twenty-four. 四乘六得二十四.

Three of them joined the army this year. 他们当中今年有三人参军. (如说 the three of them, 意

- ~ 思则是"他们三个人".)
- 2) 宾语

Give me two. 给我两个.

3) 定语

There are *nineteen* students in our class. 我们班有 十九个同学.

Our production team bought two hand tractors recently. 我们生产队最近买了两台手扶拖拉机。

【注】 hundred (百), thousand (千) 和 million (百万), 作定语用时一 律不用复数; 作名词用后面跟 of 短语时则用复数, 如:

Our country has a population of 800 million people. 我国有 八亿人口.

There are three thousand workers in the factory. 这个厂有三千工人.

Rice has been cultivated in the East for thousands of years. 水稻在东方已经种植了几千年.

Maize is the most important food crop for *millions* of people in the world. 玉米是全世界千百万人最主要的粮食.

4) 表语

She is just fourteen. 她刚十四岁.

Marx was already fifty when he began to study Russian. 马克思开始学俄语时已经五十岁了.

三、序数词

5.6 1-99 的基本的序数词

序数词	缩写式	汉译
first [fə:st]	1st	第一
second ['sekənd]	2nd	第二
third [θəːd]	3rd	第三

fourth [fo:θ]	4th	第四
fifth [fif0]	5th	第五 -
sixth [siksθ]	6th	第六
seventh ['seven θ]	7th	第七
eighth $[eit\theta]$	8th	第八
ninth $[nain\theta]$	9th	第九
tenth [ten θ]	10th	第十
eleventh	11th	第十一
twelfth [twelf θ]	12th	第十二
thirteenth	13th	第十三
nineteenth	19th	第十九
twentieth ['twentiiθ]	20th	第二十
fortieth	40th	第四十
fifty-first	51st	第五十一
sixty-second	62nd	第六十二
eighty-third	83rd	第八十三
ninety-fourth	94th	第九十四
色 明:		

说

- 1) 英语序数词 1-19 除第一 (first), 第二 (second), 第三 (third) 有特殊形式外, 其余均由在基数词后加 -th [θ] 构成.
- 2) 有几个序数词加 -th 时拼法不规则, 它们是: fifth, eighth, ninth, twelfth.
- 3) 十位整数的序数词的构成方法是: 先将十位整数基数 词的词尾 -ty 中的 y 变成 i, 然后加 -eth [i θ].
- 4) 基数词"几十几"变成序数词时,仅将个位数变成序 数词, 十位数不变. 如 twenty-one 变成 twenty-first.

- 5) 序数词的缩写形式,由阿拉伯数码后加上序数词的最后两个字母构成.如: 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 31st, 82nd, 93rd, 94th 等.
- **5.7 序数词的用法 序数词在句中可用作下列各个句子成分:**
 - 1) 主语

The *first* is better than the second. 第一个比第二个要好.

2) 宾语

He was among the first to arrive. 他是首批到达的.

3) 定语

China exploded its *first* atom bomb in October 1964. 中国于 1964 年十月爆炸了第一颗原子弹.

The *third* world is the main force in combating imperialism, colonialism and hegemonism. 第三世 界是反帝、反殖、反霸的主力军

4) 表语

Master Sun is always the *first* to get to the workshop in the morning. 孙师傅每天早晨总是第一个先到车间来.

〔注〕 序数词前面常用定冠词 the.

5.8 编号用基数词

Lesson Eleven 第十一课 Exercise 4 (读作 four) 练习四

Room 302 (读作 three o two) 第 302 号房间 page 78 (读作 seventy-eight) 第 78 页 Tel. No. 89-1586 (读作 Telephone Number eight nine one five eight six) 电话号码 89-1586 以上说法有的也可用序数词表示,如: the eleventh lesson (第十一课), the fourth exercise (第四个练习).

四、分数和小数

5.9 分数和小数的读法

- 1) 分数 fraction 分子为基数词,分母为序数词并有复数.
 - 1/2 one half [ha:f]; 1/3 one-third; 2/3 two-thirds; 1/4 one-fourth 或 one quarter ['kwo:tə]; 3/4 three-fourths 或 three quarters; 2³/₅ two and three-fifths.

2) 小数 decimal

0.5 zero ['zierou] point five; 1.25 one point two five; 3.458 three point four five eight.

五、 年、月、日、时刻表示法

5.10 年、月、日表示法

- 1) 年代 年代前用 in.
 - (in) 897 读作 (in) eight hundred and ninety-seven
 - (in) 1961 读作 (in) nineteen sixty-one (或 in nineteen hundred and sixty-one)
 - (in) 1905 读作 (in) nineteen and five
 - (in) 1800 读作 (in) eighteen hundred
- 2) 月份 月份开头第一字母须大写,表示"在某月"

- 时, 月份前面用介词 in. 下面月份后附有缩写式,
 - (in) January Jan. 一月 (in) September Sept. 九
 - (in) February Feb. 二月 月
 - (in) March Mar. 三月 (in) October Oct. 十月
 - (in) April Apr. 四月 (in) November Nov. 十
 - (in) May 五月 月
 - (in) June 六月 (in) December Dec. 十二
 - (in) July 七月 月
 - (in) August Aug. 八月
- 3) 日期 用序数词 (前面须用 the) 表示; "在某日", **前面**用介词 on.
 - (on) the first -B (on) the eighteenth +AB (on) the thirty-first =+B
 - 4) 某年某月某日
 - in September 1954 (读作 in September nineteen fifty-four) 1954年9月
 - on May 17, 1960 (读作 on May (the) seventeenth, nineteen sixty) 1960 年 5 月 17 日
 - on October 1, 1949 (读作 on October (the) first, nineteen forty-nine) 1949 年 10 月 1 日
 - [注] the twenties, the thirties 等可用来表示"几十年代". 如: in the nineties of the last century (在上一世纪的九十年代中).

5. 11 时刻表示法

1) 英语通常用 at 所引导的短语来表示时刻. 如: We get up at six (或 at six o'clock). 我们六点起床. The workers begin work at eight. 工人八点开始工作.

- 2) 如说"几点几分",则用下列方法表示:
- a) 表示"几点过几分",用介词 past,但分数须在半小时以内(包括半小时在内).如:

eleven past seven 七点过十一分 a quarter past eight 八点一刻 half past nine 九点半

b) 表示"几点差几分",用介词 to,但分数须在半小时以上(不包括半小时在内).如:

two to seven 七点差两分

a quarter to eight 八点差一刻 eighteen to nine 九点差十八分

[注] 读时间表如上课时间表、行车时间表时,可以直接照表上数字读. 日常生活中讲时刻也可用这样的说法. 如:

7:15 读作 seven fifteen 11:30 读作 eleven thirty

9:20 读作 nine twenty 3:53 读作 three fifty-three

第六章 形容词和副词

一、形容词。

- 6.1 什么是形容词 形容词 (adjective) 用来修饰名词,表示名词的属性,一般放在它所修饰的名词之前. 如: a red star 一颗红星, the beautiful picture 那幅美丽的图画, political study 政治学习.
 - 6.2 形容词的用法 形容词在句中可作:
 - 1) 定语

He is a good boy. 他是个好孩子.

Long live the *great*, *glorious* and *correct* Communist Party of China! 伟大的、光荣的、正确的中国共产党万岁!

2) 表语

The film *The White-haired Girl* is both moving and *instructive*. 电影《白毛女》 很动人,而且富有教育意义.

I am very glad to see you. 见到你很高兴.

3) 宾语补足语 和宾语一起构成复合宾语.

Have you got everything *ready* for the journey? 你行装都准备好了吗?

We keep our rooms clean and tidy. 我们经常保持 房间的整洁. 4) 相当于名词 某些形容词前用定冠词 the, 变成名词化的形容词, 可在句中作主语、宾语等. 如:

He has a keen sense of the new. 他对新鲜事物有敏锐的感觉(作宾语)

- Dr. Bethune worked day and night to save the sick and the wounded of the Eighth Route Army. 白 求恩大夫日夜救护八路军的伤病员.
- [注] 上两例中, the new = the new things, the sick = the sick soldiers, the wounded = the wounded soldiers. 参看 3.4 的 7).
- 6.3 形容词的位置 形容词一般须放在它所修饰的名词之前 (关于形容词有时可以后置的问题,见 16.18) 但如有一个以上的形容词修饰名词,这些形容词的位置即由它们和被修饰名词的关系的密切程度来决定,一般说来,关系最密的最靠近被修饰的名词,关系较远的离被修饰的名词也较远,如:

a strong, swift horse 一匹又壮又快的马many happy and healthy children 很多幸福而健康的儿童 (注意 many 和 happy and healthy 不是 幷列关系, 而是修饰 happy and healthy children) that young Korean fighter 那个年轻的朝鲜战士 (young 修饰 Korean fighter, 故其后不用 and)

- a short and militant dazibao 一篇简短有力的大字报. (militant 一词较长, 放在 short 之后, 这也是英语里安排形容词位置的一种方法)
- 6.4 形容词的比较等级及其形式 英语形容词比较等级 (degrees of comparison) 一般有两个: 即比较级 (comparative degree) 和最高级 (superlative degree). 平时所见

的形容词通常称为原级 (positive degree). 形容词的比较级形式是: "形容词+后缀 -er" 或"单词 more+形容词". 它的最高级形式是: "形容词+后缀-est" 或"单词 most+形容词". 现将形容词比较等级的形式变化列述如下:

1) 规则变化

构 成 法	原 级	比较级	最高级
1. 单音节词末尾加 -er 和 -est	great 伟大的	greater	great <i>est</i>
2. 单音节词如以 -e 结尾, 只加 -r 和 -st	brave 奶敢的 fine 好的	braver finer	bravest finest
3. 闲音节单音节词如末尾只有一个辅音字母,须先双写这个辅音字母,再加 -er 和 -est	big 大的 hot 熱的	big <i>ger</i> hot <i>ter</i>	big <i>gest</i> hot <i>test</i>
4. 少数以 -y, -er, -ct., -ble 结尾的双音节词, 未尾加 -er 和 -est (以 -y 结尾的词, 如 -y 前是辅音字母, 则变 y 为 -i, 再加 -er 和 -est. 以 -e 结尾的词仍只加 -r 和 -st)	happy 快乐的 clever 聪明的 narrow 狭窄的 able 能	happier cleverer narrower abler	happiest cleverest narrowest ablest
5. 其他双音节和多音节词皆 在前面加单词 more 和 most	difficult 难的	more difficult	most difficult

[注一] 形容词比较等级所加的 -er 和 -est, 自成一个音节, 分别读作 [a] 和 [ist]. 如:

原级	比较级	最高级
tali [to:1]	taller ['tɔːlə]	tallest ['to:list]
happy ['hæpi]	happier ['hæpiə]	happiest ['hæpiist]
thin [0in]	thinner [18inə]	thinnest ['0inist]
fine [fain]	finer ['fainə]	finest ['fainist]

【往二〕 如果形容词原级的词末为不发音的字母 r, 加 -er 和 -est 时, r 要发[r] 音, 如:

near [niə] clear [klia] clearer ['klierə]

nearer ['niero] nearest ['nierist] clearest ['kliərist]

如果形容词原级的词末的发音为 [ŋ], 在加 -er 和 -est 时, [ŋ] 音 后得加一个 [g] 音, 如:

long [lon]

strong [strong] stronger ['stronge] longer ['longal

strongest ['strongist] longest [longist]

[注三] 有些形容词一般没有比较等级,如:

right, wrong, woolen, wooden.

2) 不规则变化

原级	ž į	比较级	最高级
good	好 } 健康的 }	better	best
bad	坏,差	worse	worst
many	多 多	more	most
litt l e	小,少~	less	least
far	远	farther, further	farthest, further

3) 形容词前如加 less 和 least, 则表示"较不"和"最 不"。如:

> interesting 有趣 difficult 难 较无趣 less difficult less interesting 较不难 least interesting 最无趣 least difficult 最不难

6.5 形容词比较级的用法 比较级用于二者的比较, 其结构是: 含有形容词比较级的主句+从属连词 than 引导 的从句(从句中常省去意义上和主句相同的部分). 如:

> Li is older than Chou. 李比周年纪大. (从句中省去 is old)

- There are *more* workers in this factory *than* in that factory. 这个工厂的工人比那个工厂多. (从句中省去了 there are workers)
- After two years in the countryside she is healthier and stronger. 在农村呆了两年之后她 (比以前)强壮多了. (注意这里省去了从句 than she was)
- The dictatorship of the proletariat in our country is more consolidated than ever before. 我国的无产阶级专政空前巩固. (than 后省去了 the dictatorship of the proletariat was)
- 【注一〕 汉语可以说"昆明的气候比兰州好"英语必须加 that, 译为: The climate of Kunming is better than that of Lanchow. (参见 4.13 的 3))
- [注二] 英语比较级常译作"较…""…一些"等, 但不等于汉语的"更…"。 汉语的"更…"须用"still" 或 "even" 来表示. (参看 6.17) 如: This book is even more difficult than that one. 这本书比那本书更难.
- [注三] 有些情况下,汉语不用"较"等字眼,英语则须用比较级,如: Will the younger people give their seats to old people? 请年轻人把座位让给老年人好不好?
- 6.6 形容词最高级的用法 形容词最高级用于二者以上的比较,其结构是:定冠词 the + 形容词最高级 + 名词 +表示范围的短语或从句.

The proletariat is the greatest class in the history of mankind. 无产阶级是人类历史上最伟大的阶级.

- This is the best film (that) I have ever seen. 这是 我所看过的最好的电影. (that 在口语一般省略)
- Mt. Jolmolungma is the world's highest peak. 珠穆 朗玛峰是世界最高峰.

Kweilin is the most beautiful place (that) I have

ever visited. 桂林是我所到过的 最美丽的地方。 (that 一般省略)

- [注一] 形容词最高级后的名词倘前面已提到过,可省去. 如: This novel is *the best* (that) I have ever read. 这是我所看过的 小说中最好的一本.
- [注二] 在口语中,形容词最高级也可以用于二者的比较. 如: This is the shortest of the two roads. 这是两条路中最近的一条路.
- [注三] 作表语用的形容词最高级前面常省去定冠词 the. 如: You had better put the picture where light is best. 你最好把 画放在光线最好的地方。

二、副词

- 6.7 什么是副词 副词 (adverb) 修饰动词、形容词、 其他副词或全句, 说明时间、地点、程度、方式等概念. 如: often 往往, here 这里, very 很, quickly 很快地.
 - 6.8 副词的构成
 - 1) 本身就是副词 如: now 现在, there 那里, rather 颇.
- 2) 由形容词加词尾 -ly 变来. 如: happily 幸福地, firmly 坚决地.
 - 3) 与形容词同形

early adj. 早的 early adv. 早 high adj. 高的 high adv. 高高地 long adj. 长的,长久的 long adv. 长久地

- 6.9 副词的种类 副词可分为下列几种:
- 1) 普通副词 (ordinary adverb) 如: together 一起, well 好, seriously 认真地, slowly 慢, carefully 小心地

- 2) 疑问副词 (interrogative adverb)如: when 何时, where 何地, how 如何, why 为何. (疑问副词的用法举例见 17.11 和 17.12)
- 3) 关系副词 (relative adverb) 如: where, when. (用 法见 18.18 的 2))
- 4) 连接副词 (conjunctive adverb) 如: then 然后, so 所以, therefore 所以, however 然而, hence 所以, thus 这样, nevertheless 然而, otherwise 否则, still 可是,仍然. (连接副词的用法见第十五章"常用连词用法举例")
 - 6. 10 副词的用法 副词在句中可作:
 - 1) 状语 (这是副词在句子中的主要功用)
 It is raining hard. 雨下得很大. (副词 hard 作状语, 修饰动词 is raining)
 - Don't drive too fast. 车子不要开得太快. (fast 是副词,作状语,修饰动词 drive,副词 too 又修饰副词 fast)
 - He speaks English quite well. 他英语讲得相当好. (well 修饰动词 speaks, quite 又修饰副词 well)
 - This is a fairly useful tool. 这是一件相当有用的工具. (fairly 修饰形容词 useful)
 - The PLA has always kept up the fine tradition of plain living and hard struggle. 中国人民解放军一直保持艰苦奋斗的好传统. (always 修饰动词 has kept)
 - We resolutely support the third world countries in their struggle against the superpowers. 我们坚决支持第三世界国家反对超级大国的斗争. (resolutely

修饰动词 support)

2) 表语

Is he up? 他起床了沒有? She is out 她出去了。

3) 定语

Life here is full of joy. 这儿的生活充满了欢乐· (here 修饰名词 life)

- 6. 11 副词的位置
- 1) 修饰动词时,有三种位置. (见 16.23 状语的位置)
- 2) 修饰形容词和副词时, 须放在被修饰词之前.

 It is a rather difficult job. 这是一件颇为困难的工作, (rather 修饰形容词 difficult)

He runs very fast. 他跑得很快. (very 修饰副词 fast)

3) 副词作定语时,一般放在被修饰的名词之后,

The peasants *there* are busy digging a canal now. 那里的农民现在正忙于修水渠.

On my way home, I met groups of Young Pioneers. 在回家的路上我遇见成群的少先队员。

6. 12 副词的比较等级 和形容词同形的副词的形式变化与形容词完全相同. 但以词尾 -ly 结尾的副词 (early 一词的 -ly 不是词尾) 须用 more 和 most. 另外, 须注意下面例词中 well, badly 的不规则变化. 如:

原级		比较级	最高级
hard	努力地	harder	hardest
fast	快	faster	fastest
well	好	better	best

badly	坏	worse	worst
early	早	earlier	earliest
quickly	快	more quickly	most quickly
happily	快乐地	more happily	most happily

6.13 副词比较等级的用法

1) 副词比较级的用法与形容词比较级相似.

She plays table tennis better than I. 她乒乓球打得 比我好. (从句中省略了 play table tennis)

Master Worker Wen usually gets to the workshop earlier than the rest of us. 溫师傅到车间通常 比我们早.

They speak less fluently but more correctly than we do. 他们讲得不如我们流利,但比我们正确.

2) 副词最高级用法,除副词前可以不用 the 外 (用 the **也可**以),其余与形容词最高级相同.

Hsiao Ying plants rice seedlings the *fastest*. 小英插秧最快.

He swims the best in Class One. 一班他游泳最好.

三、 比较等级的一些特殊用法

6. 14 两种不同形式和意义的比较等级 有几个形容词和副词的比较级和最高级有两种不同形式,而且意义也不同。茲列表如下:

原级	比 较 级	最 髙 级
old	elder 较老, 较旧 elder 较年长	{ oldest 最老, 最旧 eldest 最年长
late	later 较迟,后来(指时间) latter 后者(和"前者"比,指顺序)	latest 最近(指时间) last 最后(指顺序)
far	farther 较远 further 较远,进一步	farthest 最远 furthest 最远

举例说明:

1) Peking is one of the oldest cities in the world. 北京是世界上最古老的城市之一。

Her eldest daughter is a textile worker. 她的大女儿 是个纺织女工。

My elder brother is in college. He is two years older than I. 我哥哥在上大学,他比我大两岁.

- [注] clder, oldest 说明人的年纪或事物的年代的久远, elder, eldest 只用来区别家庭成员等的长幼.
 - 2) They reached the place *later* than we. 他们到达 那儿比我们晚.

Twenty years later Kao Yu-pao returned to his home village. 二十年后高玉宝回到自己的家乡.

Who spoke last? 是谁最后发言的?

What is the *latest* news about the sports meet? 关于运动会最近有什么消息?

- 6. 15 as...as; not so...as 或 not as...as 1)表示"相等"用 as...as, 2)表示"不相等"用 not so ...as 或 not as...as. 如:
 - 1) This knife is as sharp as that one. 这把刀跟那把一样快.

Chen is as tall as I. 陈和我一般高.

Is this bag of soyabeans as heavy as that one? 这 袋大豆跟那袋一样重吗?

Women in China work as hard as men in building socialism. 中国的妇女和男子一样努力建设社会主义.

- [注] 注意 as 后面的形容词如作定语,而被定语修饰的名词有不定冠词 a 时,冠词 a 须放在形容词之后,如: German is as difficult a language as English. (德语和英语一样难学.) 这样的词序也适用于so. 如: I have never seen so beautiful a place as Kweilin before. 我过去从未见过象桂林这样美丽的地方.
 - 2) Tien An Men Square was not so big as it is now. 天安门广场过去沒有现在这样大.

The Atlantic Ocean is not as big as the Pacific Ocean. 大西洋沒有太平洋大.

6. 16 表示"几倍于" 用 twice (两倍), three times (三倍) 等加 as...as. 如:

Peking is *ten times as* big *as* my home town. 北京 有我的家乡十个大.

The output of the paper mill is now three times as high as it was in 1966. 这家纸厂的生产比一九六六年增加两倍.

The irrigation canal in their commune is twice as long as that in ours. 他们公社的灌溉渠比我们公社的长一倍.

Asia is four times as large as Europe. 亚洲比欧洲 大三倍.

【注】 表示"几倍于"也可以用下面的说法: Three times three is nine. 三乘三得九。 He is twice my age. 他的年龄比我大一倍.

This reservoir is four times the size of that one. 这个水库有那个水库四个大.

Our county's agricultural output this year is 11 per cent higher than that of last year. 我们县今年农业总产值比去年增长百分之十一.

6. 17 表示程度 可用 much, far, still, even, a little, no, any, a great deal 等状语来修饰形容词和副词的比较级. 如:

The Yellow River is long, but the Yangtze River is eyen longer 黄河长, 长江更长.

We are *much* better off now. 我们的生活比过去好得多。

She sings far better than the others. 她唱得比别 人好得多

Unite to win *still* greater victories! 团结起来, 爭取 更大的胜利!

[注一] 注意下面的一些说法:

I couldn't move a step further. 我连一步也走不动了.

The meeting lasted two hours longer than usual. 会议比平常多 开了两个钟头.

He is a head taller than I. 他比我高一个头.

(也可以说 He is taller than me by a head.) -

They got there earlier than we by twenty minutes. 他们比我们早二十分钟到达那里.

Do you want any more? — Yes. Give me two more. 你还要吗? —— 是的, 再给我两个.

The irrigated area in this prefecture is four times bigger than in 1966. 这个专区的灌溉面积比一九六六年增加三倍.

This brigade's grain output has increased by 140 per cent since 1960. 一九六〇年以来这个大队的粮食增产一点四倍。

Have you any more tickets? - Sorry, I have no more. 你还

有票吗? —— 对不起,没有了.

- 【注二】 可用形容词最高级 + possible 等一类的词来强调语气,如: The workers are working to increase production at the highest possible speed. 工人们努力以最快速度提高产量. (也可以说 at the highest speed possible) (参见 16.18 的 2))
- **6.** 18 "比较级+and+比较级" (后面不可接 than 从句) 可用来表示"越来越…". 如:

The days are getting longer and longer. 白天越来越 长了.

He is becoming *more and more* interested in sports. 他对运动越来越有兴趣了,

6. 19 the more ... the more 的用法 意思是"越…, 就越…". 如:

The more, the better. 越多越好.

The harder you work, the more you will learn. 你越努力, 就越学得多.

The greater the mass of a body, the greater is its inertia. 物体的质量越大,它的惯性就越大.

We must unite with the masses; the more we unite with, the better. 团结广大人民, 团结得越多越好.

6. 20 **more than 和 less than** 这两个固定词组分别表示"多于""少于". 如:

There are *more than* three hundred households in our production brigade. 我们生产大队有三百多户.

We fulfilled our production plan for this year in less than ten months. 我们不到十个月就完成了本年度生产计划.

Our country has established diplomatic relations

with more than one hundred countries. 我国已经和一百多个国家建立了外交关系.

6. 21 no more than 和 not more than no more than 的 意思是 "只不过", not more than 的意思是 "不多于". 试比较:

There are no more than ten tickets left. 剩下不到 十张票. (有"票少"的含义).

The reservoir was built by a production brigade of not more than 200 households. 这个水库是由一个不到两百戶人家的生产大队建造的. (沒有"多"或"少"的含义,只是客观说明数目)

This room is no bigger than that. 这个房间并不 比那个大. (有"两个房间都不大"的含义)

This room is not bigger than that one. 这个房间不比那个大. (沒有"两个房间都不大或都不小"的含义)

- [注] 注意 not ... any more than 在下面句子中的用法:
 They cannot do the impossible any more than we can. 他们和
 我们同样不能做不可能的事情。
- 6. 22 no less than 和 not less than no less than 的 意思是"不亚于", not less than 的意思是"不少于", 试比较:

There were no less than a thousand people at the meeting. 到会的有一千人之多. (有"到会人多"的含义)

There were not less than one thousand people at the meeting. 到会的至少有一千人. (沒有"到会人多或人少"的含义)

This song is no less popular than that one. 这首 歌之受欢迎不亚于那首歌. (有"两首歌都受欢迎"的含义)

This song is not less popular than that one. 这 首歌受欢迎的程度不比那首差. (纯粹比较. 不一定有"两首歌都受欢迎"的含义)

6. 23 all the better 和 so much the better 这一类的 说法都有"因此而更…"的含义. 如:

If that is so, all the better. 果真如此, 那就更好.

If he will come, so much the better. 如果他愿意来, 那更好.

6. 24 最高级有时不表示比较 在这种情况下,它只表示"非常"或"在很大程度上"如:

The peasants helped us with the greatest pleasure. 农民非常乐意帮助我们.

It is a most important question. (a most=a very) 这是一个很重要的问题.

Their aim is to complete the railroad in the shortest time possible. 他们的目的是在尽可能短的时间内修好这条铁路.

[注] 注意 most 前如没有定冠词,不表示比较,意思是"很";如有定冠词,仍表示比较,意思是"最". 如: the most important question (最重要的问题).

第七章 动词概说

7.1 概说

- 1) 动词 (verb) 是表示动作或状态的词.
- a) 表示动作: swim 游泳 overthrow 推翻
- b) 表示状态: have 有 be 是
- 2) 英语动词有时态、语态、语气等形式上的变化.
- 7.2 限定动词和非限定动词 从是否被主语所限定来分,动词有限定动词 (finite verb) 和非限定动词 (non-finite verb) 两大类.
- 1) 限定动词 限定动词用作句子的谓语动词, 并被主语 所限定, 有人称和数的变化. 如:

He is a tractor driver. 他是一个拖拉机手.

Facts are more eloquent than words. 事实胜于雄 辩.

We have friends all over the world. 我们的朋友逼天下.

We love our great socialist motherland. 我们热爱 伟大的社会主义祖国。

2) 非限定动词 非限定动词有动词不定式、动名词和分词三种,在句子里都不能单独作谓语动词,故不被主语所限定,沒有人称和数的变化.如:

I am pleased to meet you. 我很高兴与你相识、(动词不定式)

- Smoking is harmful to the health. 吸烟对身体有害. (动名词)
- The People's Liberation Army is always a fighting force. 人民解放军永远是一个战斗队, (分词)
- We are marching forward along the road *pointed* out by Chairman Mao. 我们正沿着毛主席指出的道路前进. (分词)
- 7.3 实义动词、连系动词、情态动词和助动词 从其含义来分,动词有实义动词 (notional verb),连系动词 (link verb),情态动词 (modal verb) 和助动词 (auxiliary verb) 四类.
- 1) 实义动词 实义动词有完全的词义, 并能独立作谓语动词, 如:
 - In 1977 the People's Republic of China celebrated its 28th anniversary. 一九七七年中华人民共和国庆祝建国二十八周年.
 - He likes to go for a long walk on Sundays. 他喜欢星期日出去作长距离散步.
 - We have a TV set in the club of our production team. 我们生产队俱乐部有架电视机.
- 2) 连系动词 连系动词在句中作谓语动词,后面跟表语. 英语连系动词有 be (是), seem (似乎), look (看来), become (变成), get (变得), grow (变得), feel (咸到), turn (变得,变成), appear (显得), remain (仍旧是) 等如:
 - Chairman Mao was the great leader and teacher of the Chinese people. 毛主席是中国人民的伟大领袖和导师.

The children in this nursery look very healthy. ix

个托儿所的孩子看起来都非常健康.

Keep quiet, please! 请安静!

The tape recorder seems all right. 这架录音机好象 沒有毛病.

She became a member of the Communist Party during the Anti-Japanese War. 她在抗日战爭期间入了党.

The problem *remained* unsolved until last year. 问题到去年才解决.

- [注一] 下面句子中的 come 和 go 也是连系动词: Lenin's prediction has come true. 列宁的预言实现了. Something has gone wrong with the truck. 卡车出毛病了.
- [注二] 有些连系动词如 seem, appear 等后面常跟 to be. 如: The new text seems to be easy, but actually it is rather difficult. 这篇新课文好象很容易, 其实相当难.
- 3) 情态动词 情态动词有 can (能), may (可以, 也许), must (必须) 等及其过去式 could, might 等, 表示能力、义务、必要、猜测等说话人的语气或情态 情态动词只能和动词原形一起构成谓语动词
 - 〔注〕 关于情态动词详见第十一章.
- 4) 助动词 助动词有 shall, will, have, be, should, would, do 等. 它们只能和主要动词一起构成各种时态、语态、语气等动词形式,以及否定和疑问等结构中的谓语动词.
 - 〔注〕 关于助动词详见第十章.
- 7. 4 及物动词和不及物动词 从是否需要 宾 语 来 分, 实义动词又有及物动词和不及物动词两类.
- 1) 及物动词 后面必须跟宾语意义才完整的实义动词, 叫做及物动词 (transitive verb). 如:
 - I believe that the committee will consider our sugges-

tion. 我相信委员会将会考虑我们的建议.

"How long can I keep the book?" Li asked. 李问: "这本书我可以借多久?"

Comrade Chin Hsun-hua set us a good example. 金 训华同志给我们树立了好榜样。

I don't *think* that it will be very hot today. 我看今天不会很热.

Crude oil *contains* many useful substances. 原油含有许多有用的物质。

2) 不及物动词 本身意义完整后面不须跟宾语的实义动词, 叫做不及物动词 (intransitive verb). 如:

Birds fly. 鸟会飞.

It happened in June 1932. 这件事发生于一九三二年 六月。

My watch has stopped. 我的表停了.

She *spoke* at the criticism meeting yesterday evening. 她在昨天晚上的批判会上发了言.

Did you sleep well last night? 你昨天晚上睡得好吗?

- 3) 兼作及物动词和不及物动词 英语里有不少实义 动词可以兼作及物动词和不及物动词. 这样的动词又有两种不同的情况:
 - a) 兼作及物动词和不及物动词时, 意义不变. 试比较:

Shall I begin at once? 我可以立刻开始吗? (begin 作不及物动词)

She began working as a librarian after she left school. 她毕业后当图书馆管理员. (began 作及物动词)

When did they *leave* Peking? 他们是什么时候离开北京的? (leave 作及物动词)

They *left* last week. 他们是上周离开的. (left 作 不及物动词)

b) 兼作及物动词和不及物动词时,有时意义不尽相同,如:

Wash your hands before meals. 饭前要洗手. Does this cloth wash well? 这布经得起洗吗?

- 4) 与汉语的比较 有时英语动词的及物和不及物的用法,与汉语的用法不一样,请注意下列两种情况.
- a) 有的动词在英语里只能用作不及物动词,而汉语则可用作及物动词. 如: arrive 到达, agree 同意, listen 听. 英语里这些动词后面常接介词. 如:

We arrived at the factory at noon. 我们于中午到达 工厂. (at 不能省去)

(比较: We reached the factory at noon.)

Everybody listened to the report with great interest. 每个人都很有兴趣地听报告. (to 不可省去)

(比较: We all heard the report.)

Do they agree to the plan? 他们同意这个计划吗? (to 不可省去)

b) 有的动词在英语里只能用作及物动词, 而在汉语里则不能用作及物动词. 如 serve 为…服务.

Chairman Mao taught us to serve the people whole-heartedly. 毛主席教导我们要全心全意地为人民服务。

[注] 有时不及物动词后面可以跟形容词或名词, 如: The sun rose red. 旭日升起. Don't marry young. 不要早婚. Something has gone wrong with the heating. 暖气坏了.

Comrade Chou stood firm all through the fierce class struggle. 周同志在剧烈的阶级斗争中立场坚定.

Tung-sheng went away quite a child and returned a grown map. 东生走的时候还很小,回来的时候已经是一个成年人了。 內 以上。

- 7.5 短语动词 动词常和某些其他词类用在一起,构成固定词组,形成所谓短语动词 (phrasal verb). 和行为动词一样,短语动词也可分为及物和不及物两种,短语动词尽管由几个词构成,为了掌握方便,可以作为一个整体看待. 同一般行为动词一样使用.
- 1) 动词+介词 这类短语动词用作及物动词,后面须跟宾语.

The small boy *insisted on* going with the PLA men. 那个小孩坚持要参军.

Do you often *listen to* broadcasts in English? 你常 听英语广播吗?

Look at the children. Aren't they lovely? 看看这些孩子们, 他们多么可爱呀!

We stand for self-reliance. 我们是主张自力更生的.

这一类的短语动词还有很多,如 depend on (upon) (依靠), wait on (服侍), look for (寻找), deal with (对待), look after (照料), wait for (等待) 等.

2) 动词+副词 这类短语动词有的用作及物动词, 有的用作不及物动词.

I always get up as soon as the bell rings. 我总是一 打铃就起床(不及物)

Look out, there's a car coming! 当心,来汽车了! (不及物)

Have you handed in your exercises already? 你已经

交练习了吗?(及物)

Please don't forget to put on your coat; it's cold outside. 请不要忘记穿上衣,外面很冷.(及物)

这一类的短语动词还有很多,如 put out (扑灭), eat up (吃光), wake up (醒来), set off (出发), come up (走近), go on (继续), lock up (禁闭), give up (放弃)等.

[注一] "动词+副词"这类短语动词和上面第一类"动词+介词"的不同之处在于: "动词+介词"用作及物动词,后面须跟宾语; "动词+副词"则有的及物,有的不及物,用作及物动词而宾语为人称代词或自身代词时,副词往往放在宾语之后。如:

Please wake me up at five tomorrow. 请在明天早上五点唤醒我. The landlord *locked* her up in a small dark room. 地主把她关在一间小黑屋子里.

If you have done your exercises, please hand them in. 如果 你们练习做完了请交来。

[注二] 上述两类短语动词有不少可兼作及物和不及物动词用。如:

He took off his hat when he entered the office.

他进办公室后脱下帽子.(及物)

The plane took off at seven sharp. 飞机在七点整起飞. (不及物)

Team Leader Li rang up the brigade to ask about the time of the meeting. 生产队李队长打电话给生产大队问开会的时间. (及物)

If you can't come, please ring up and let us know. 你如来不了,请来电话告诉我们一声. (不及物)

3) 动词十副词十介词 上面第二类短语 动词"动词十副词"之后有的可以再加一个介词,形成另一种短语动词。 这类短语动词用作及物动词。如:

Do not give up hope. We must go on with the experiment. 不要失望. 我们必须继续试验. (to go on with 继续)

- He came up to me. 他走到我跟前. (to come up to 走近) 这类短语动词还有: look down upon (看不起), do away with (去掉), put up with (忍受)等.
- 4) 动词+名词+介词 这类短语动词也是及物的,如: He shook hands with all the guests at the banquet.他 和宴会上的宾客一一握手.
 - Young Pioneers often come to the Children's Palace to take part in after-school activities. 少先队员经常到少年宫来参加课外活动.
 - Pay attention to the temperature of the stored rice. 注意仓库里的稻谷的温度.
- 这一类的短语还有: put an end to (结束), take notice of (注意), catch hold of (抓住), lose sight of (看不见), make use of (利用)等.
 - [注一] 这类短语动词中的名词之前,可用形容词作定语. 如:

The nurses at the commune hospital took good care of the patients. 公社医院的护士很好地看护着病人.

We must *pay close attention to* English pronunciation. 我们 必须密切注意英语语音。

- [注二] "be+形容词+介词", 如: be afraid of (害怕), be fond of (喜爱), be angry with (生...的气) 等也是一种短语动词.
 - 7. 6 动词的基本形式 (principal forms of the verb)
- 1) 英语动词的四种基本形式 它们是动词原形 (root form of the verb), 过去式 (past tense form), 过去分词 (past participle) 和现在分词 (present participle). 这四种形式和助动词一起构成动词的时态,语态和语气.

原形	过去式	过去分词	现在分词
work	worked	worked	working
write	wrote	written	writing
have	had	had	having
do	did	done	doing

- 2) 动词的原形 这是前面不加 to 的动词不定式形式, 也就是词典中一般给的形式. 如 be, have, do, work, study 等.
- 3) 动词过去式和过去分词的构成有规则的和 不规则的 两种. 规则动词 (regular verb) 的过去式和过去分词,由在原形后面加词尾 -ed 构成. 关于动词原形加 -ed 的方法和读音见下表:

例构成设备	在动词后加 -ed	以 -e 结尾 的动词加 -d	以辅音字母 +y 结尾的 动词先将 y 变为 i 再加 -ed	以重读闭音节或 r 音节结尾而末 尾只有一个辅音 字母的动词,双 写辅音字母后再 加 -ed
在清辅音后读 [t]	worked finished helped fetched	hoped liked joked		clap <i>ped</i> stop <i>ped</i> map <i>ped</i>
在元音和独辅 音后读 [d]	followed stayed called entered	agreed believed lived changed	carried studied tried	plan <i>ned</i> refer <i>red</i> prefer <i>red</i>
在辅音 t, d 后 读 [id]	wanted rested needed			admitted omitted permitted

〔注〕 少数双音节的动词,尽管重音在第一个音节,仍双写末尾的辅音字母,

然后再加 -ed. 如:

travel - travelled

level - levelled

'total - totalled

model - modelled

但美国英语不双写辅音字母、如 travel — traveled.

不规则动词 (irregular verb) 的过去式及过去分词的形式是不规则的. 这些动词为数虽不多, 但都是比较常用的, 必须熟记. 不规则动词表见本书附录一.

- 4) 英语动词的现在分词 由动词原形加词尾 -ing 构成, 其构成方法如下:
 - a) 一般情况下, 直接加 -ing:

go—going `去

stand—standing 站式

ask—asking 同

answer-answering 回答

study--studying 学习

be—being 是

see—seeing 看

[注一] 和名词复数、动词第三人称现在一般时加 -s (-es) 不同, 动词末尾 如为"辅音字母+y" 时, y 不变, 其后直接加 -ing: 如 studying ['stadiin], fly — flying ['flaiin], carry — carrying ['kæriin].

【注二〕 动词结尾为辅音字母 r 时,加 -ing, r 在此必须发音. 如:
enter ['entə] — entering ['entəriŋ] 进入
answer ['a:nsə] — answering ['a:nsəriŋ] 回答
wear [weə] — wearing ['weəriŋ] 穿

b) 以不发音的 e 结尾的动词, 去掉 e, 再加 -ing. 如:
come—coming 来 write—writing 写
take—taking 含 become—becoming 变成

c) 动词是闭音节的单音节词,或是以重读闭音节结尾的 多音节词,而末尾只有一个辅音字母时,这个辅音字母须双 写,然后再加-ing.如:

sit-sit*ting* 坐

run—run*ning* 跑

stop—stopping 停止

begin-beginning 开始

admit—admitting 承认 forget—forgetting 忘记

- [注一] Send, think, accept 等动词虽是闭音节或以重读闭音节结尾, 但 末尾有一个以上的辅音字母, 因此, 这个辅音字母不双写, 应直接加-ing. 如: sending, thinking, accepting.
- [注二] 少数双音节的动词,重音在第一音节,仍双写末尾的辅音字母,然后再加 -ing,如:(参见 7.6 的 3) 中的注)

travel — travelling

level - levelling

total — total*ling*

model - modelling

美国英语不双写辅音字母,如 travel --- traveling.

d) 少数几个以 -ie 结尾的动词,须将 ie 变作 y, 再加 ing. 如:

die-dying 死

tie-tying 捆, 缚, 系

lie-lying 躺, 说谎

第八章 动词的时态

一、概说

- **8.1 基本概念** 英语的时态 (tense) 是一种动词形式, 不同的时态用以表示不同的时间与方式.
- 8. 2 种类 从时间 (time) 上看, 英语的时态有现在、过去,将来、过去将来之分, 从方面 (aspect) 上看, 英语的时态又有"一般"、"进行"、"完成"、"完成进行"之分, 动词的动作可以发生于四种不同的时间,表现在四种不同的方面. 每一种"时间-方面" 就构成一种时态, 所以英语动词共有十六种时态, 但常用的只有十三种时态, 过去将来完成时、过去将来完成进行时和将来完成进行时比较少用, 因此本书略去此三种时态.

现以动词 work 为例,将英语十六种不同时态列表如下:

方面	现 在	过 去	将来	过去将来
一般	I work.	I worked.	I shall work.	I should work.
进行	I am working.	I was working.	I shall be working.	I should be working.
完成	I have worked.	I had worked.	I shall have worked.	I should have worked.
完成进行	I have been working.	I had been working.	I shall have been working.	I should have been working.

8. 3 与汉语的比较 汉语动词沒有时态形式。也就是说,汉语动词不是用词形上的变化,而是用特定的词汇来表示动作的各种不同的时间和方面的。如表示时间观念用时间词"现在"、"将来"、"曾经"、"过去"等。表示方面用"正在"、"经常"、"了"、"过"、"已经"等。如:

The workers are playing football on the sports ground 工人们现在正在操场上踢足球。

I have read The Song of Youth. 我读过《青春之歌》 这本小说

The students will soon go to help the commune with the harvest. 学生不久就要去帮助公社收获.

二、一般时态

(一) 概说

8. 4 基本概念和种类

- 1) 一般时态 (indefinite tenses) 表示较抽象和较一般的动作,或单纯一件事情的发生。
- 2) 一般时态有四种:现在一般时,过去一般时,将来一般时和过去将来一般时.
- 8. 5 形式 现将动词 be, have, study 的现在一般时、过去一般时、将来一般时和过去将来一般时的形式变化列表如下:

	现在一般时	过去一般时	将来一般时	过去将来一般时
动词 be	I am You are He } is She We You They	I was You were He She }was We You They	He will she will they be	I should be He She would You They
动词 have	You have We They He She has	You He She We They	I shall We have He She will You have They	I should have He She would You They
行为 动词 study	You Study We They She She Studies	You He She We They	He She Will Study	I should study He She would You study They

[注] 根据动词形式的变化, 动词又可分为动词 be (verb to be), 动词 have (verb to have) 和行为动词 (verb to do). 行为动词 do 指除 be 和 have 以外的一切动词,切勿与助动词混淆. 上表第三栏行为动词 study 的变化适用于除 have, be 以外所有其它动词 (即行为动词).

(二) 现在一般时

8. 6 现在一般时的基本概念 现在一般时 (present indefinite tense) 表示包括"现在"在内的一段时间内经常发生的动作或存在的状态. 如:

I know Lao Wang well, we were classmates at

middle school. 我和老王很熟,我们中学时同班. The earth *moves* round the sun. 地球围绕着太阳旋转.

There is no income tax in China; a worker's pay is net pay. 中国沒有所得稅,工人的工资是淨得工资.

8.7 现在一般时的形式

- 1) 动词 be 除第一人称单数用 am, 第三人称单数用 is 外, 其余一律用 are.
- 2) 动词 have 除第三人称单数用 has 外, 其余一律用 have.
- 3) 行为动词 行为动词的现在一般时形式,除第三人称单数由动词原形加词尾 -s 或 -es 构成 (其构成法和读音与名词复数同,详见下节) 外,其余一概与动词原形同形

动词 be, have, study 在肯定、否定、一般疑问和简略答 语等四种结构中的现在一般时各形式列表如下:

	肯 定	否 定
动 词	I am You are He She It	I am not You are not He She is not
be	We You They are	You are not

动 词 have	I you have He She has We	You } have not He
	You have They	You have not
行 为 动词 study	I You He She You You They Studies Studies Study	I You He She You Ho One study He She Ado not study He You They

	一般疑问	筒 略 答 语
	Are you?	Yes, I am. No, I am not.
动 词 be	Is he?	Yes, he is. No, he is not.
	Are they?	Yes, they are. No, they are not.
	Have you?	Yes, I have. No, I have not.
动 词 have	Has he?	Yes, he has. No, he has not.
	Have they?	Yes, they have. No, they have not.
	Do you study?	Yes, I do. No, I do not.
行为动词 study	Does he study?	Yes, he does. No, he does not.
	Do they study?	Yes, they do. No, they do not.

[注一] 美国英语中 have 的否定、一般疑问以及简略答语等结构和行为 动词相同, 试比较:

I haven't any brothers. (英)
I don't have any brothers. (美)
Have you any brothers? Yes, I have two.
No, I haven't any. (英)
Do you have any brothers? Yes, I have two.
No, I don't have any. (美)

[注二] 英国人口语常以 have (has) got 代替 have (has); 其否定式常以 haven't got 代替 have not, hasn't got 代替 has not.

〔注三〕 be, have, do 的否定简略式见 10.1 的 2).

8.8 行为动词现在一般时的第三人称单数形式的构成 法 它和名词复数的构成法完全一样,现列表如下:

构 成 法	例字
1. 在词末加 -s 1) 清音后发 [s] 音 2) 浊音后发 [z] 音	work 工作 — works run 跑 — runs dig 揭 — digs live 生活 — lives
2. 在以 [s] [z] [ʃ] [tʃ] [dē] 等音结尾的词末加 -es, 读作 [iz], 如词末为 e, 只加 -s	finish 作完 — finishes
3. 词末加 -es, 读作 [z] 1) 如词末为 -y, -y 前为辅音字母, 变 -y 为 i 再加 -es 2) 如词末为 -o, -o 前为辅音字母, 加 -es	fly 飞 — flies

8.9 现在一般时的基本用法

1) 表示现在存在的习惯,经常发生的动作或存在的状态. 常与 every day, twice a week (每周二次), often (常,往往), usually (通常), always (总是), seldom (很少), sometimes (有时) 等时间状语连用:

She is our English teacher. 她是我们的英语老师.

He takes a walk after supper every day. 他每天 晚饭后散步.

The children go to school at seven every morning. 孩子们每天早是七点上学.

2) 表示主语的特征、性格、能力等

He works hard. 他工作很努力. (即: 他是一个勤劳的人.)

Does she like sports? 她爱好运动吗? (即: 她是个运动爱好者吗?)

The peasants in Huhsien County draw well. 戶县农 民很会绘画. (表示能力)

3) 表示客观事实或普遍真理

The sun rises in the east.太阳从东方升起.

The correctness or incorrectness of the ideological and political line *decides* everything. 思想上政治上的路线正确与否是决定一切的.

Socialism is superior to capitalism. 社会主义比资本主义优越.

- 8. 10 现在一般时的其他用法
- 1) 在时间、条件状语从句中表示将来的动作. 如: When they leave school, they will go back to the

communes. 他们毕业后将回到公社去·

If you see him, will you tell him to ring me up? 如果你见到他, 叫他给我打个电话好吗?

We'll visit the cotton mill if it is fine tomorrow. 如果明天天晴,我们就去参观纺织厂.

2) 表示安排或计划好的将来的动作(只限于某些表示来、去、动、停、开始、终了、继续等的动词, 如 go, come, leave, start 等). 如:

The train starts at ten o'clock in the morning. 火车将于上午十点钟开出。

When does the Japanese youth delegation leave for Yenan? 日本青年代表团什么时候到延安去?
Supper is at five today. 今天五点开晚饭.

3) 引用书籍报刊或其作者时,一般须用现在一般时. 如: Marx says that the class struggle necessarily leads to the dictatorship of the proletariat. 马克思说阶级 斗爭必然导致无产阶级专政.

The story describes how a young scientist develops a new theory. 故事描写一个青年科学家如何建立了一个新的理论.

Galileo insisted that the earth moves round the sun. 伽利略坚持地球绕太阳运行的说法

[注] 图片说明、电影说明、故事重述、戏剧的舞台说明以及报纸上的标题

和故事的题目,也常用现在一般时,小说一般用过去时态,但为了描写得生动,也往往用现在一般时和其他现在时态.

5) 在某些常用旬子中表示在一个具体的现在时间 所发生的动作或存在的状态 (即不是经常发生的动作或存在的状态) 如:

Here he comes. 他来了. (注意 here 必须在句首)
There goes the bell. 铃响了. (注意 there 必须在句首)
What time is it now? 现在是几点钟?

(三) 过去一般时

8.11 过去一般时的基本概念 过去一般时 (past indefinite tense) 表示过去的动作或状态,这种动作或状态可能只限于一次,也可能是经常性的,如:

He went to town yesterday. 他昨天进城了. (一次动作)

Lo Sheng-chiao was a great internationalist fighter. 罗盛教是一个伟大的国际主义战士.

When I was young I *took* cold baths regularly. 我年青时常洗冷水浴. (经常性动作)

The Red Army covered 25,000 li and crossed 11 provinces in the Long March. 红军在长征中经过了二万五千里,横跨了十一个省份.

8.12 过去一般时的形式

1) 概说 过去一般时由规则或不规则动词的过去式表示,除 be 外,其余动词没有人称和数的变化. 各种动词的否定结构和一般疑问结构,与现在一般时的否定结构和一般疑问结构同。

- 2) 动词 be 第一人称单数和第三人称单数用 was, 其余用 were.
 - 3) 动词 have 一律用 had, 沒有人称和数的变化。
 - 4) 行为动词 一律用过去式, 沒有人称和数的变化,

现将过去一般时在肯定、否定、一般疑问和简略答语等四种结构中的各种形式列表如下:

	肯 定	否 定
	I was	I was not
1	You were	You were not
动词	He)	He
33 -3	She was	She was not
be	It)	It)
	We)	We)
1	You were	You were not.
	They	They
	I ,	I
1	You	You
动词	Не	He
30 23	She had	She had not
have	It S	It .
	We	We
	You	You
	They	They
	I ,	I ,
	You	You
行为动词	Не	Не
1	She studied	She did not study
study	We	We
	You	You
	They	They

1		
	一般疑问	简略答语
	Were you?	Yes, I was.
		No, I was not.
动词	Was he?	Yes, he was.
be		No, he was not.
50	Were they?	Yes, they were.
		No, they were not.
	Had you?	Yes, I had.
		No, I had not.
动词	Had he?	Yes, he had.
have		No, he had not.
	Had they?	Yes, they had.
		No, they had not.
	Did you study?	Yes, I did.
		No, I did not.
行为动词	Did he study?	Yes, he did.
study		No, he did not.
""	Did they study?	Yes, they did.
		No, they did not.

[注] was, were, had, did 的否定简略式见第 10.1 的 2).

8.13 过去一般时的用法

1) 表示过去的动作或状态 常带有 yesterday, two days ago, last week, in 1958 等时间状语以及由 when 等连词引导的时间状语从句.

Chairman Mao had a good swim in the Yangtze River on July 16, 1966. 毛主席于一九六六年七月十六日畅游长江.

On the eve of National Day the Premier gave a grand reception in the Great Hall of the People. 国庆节前夕,总理在人民大会堂举行盛大招待会.

She suddenly fell ill yesterday. 昨天她突然病倒.

My mother had to work long hours for the landlord when she was a little child. 我母亲很小的时候,就不得不为地主每天工作很长的时间.

2) 叙述过去连续发生的一件件事.

The school graduates got up early in the morning, fetched water, swept the yard for Uncle Chao and then went out to work with the commune members. 这些知识青年一早起来,给赵大叔打水,扫院子,然后跟社员一起去上工.

- 3) 也可以表示过去一段时间内经常或反复发生的动作. When I was in the countryside, I often called on poor and lower-middle peasants. 我在农村的时候,经常访问贫下中农.
- [注] 表示过去经常的或反复的动作, 也可以用 used to 加动词原形或用 would 加动词原形:

When I stayed at Aunt Liu's, she would tell me about the great changes which had taken place in the village since liberation. 当我住在刘大娘家里时,她常常告诉我解放以来村子里的巨大变化.

Before liberation he used to have only one meal a day. 解放前他经常每天只能吃一顿饭.

used to 常有"过去如此而现在已不如此"的含义, would 则没有这样的含义. 如:

◆

My elder brother *used to* be in the P L A. He is now Party secretary of our brigade. 我哥哥过去在解放军,现在是我们大队的党支部书记.

4) 在条件、时间状语从句中表示过去将来的动作 They said they would let us know if they heard any news about him. 他们说如果听到什么关于他的 消息,就通知我们. He promised me that when he went to the bookstore he would get me a copy of the Selected Stories of Lu Hsun. 他答应我去书店的时候替我买一本《鲁迅小说选》.

(四) 将来一般时

8. 14 将来一般时的基本概念及其形式 将来一般时 (future indefinite tense) 表示将来某一时刻的动作或状态,或将来某一段时间内经常的动作或状态,将来一般时由助动词 shall (第一人称), will (第二、三人称)+动词原形构成,美国英语则不管什么人称,一律用 will.

将来一般时在肯定、否定、一般疑问及其简略答语等四种结构中的各种形式见下表:

	肯 定	否 定
动 词 be	I shall be You will be He She It We shall be You They Will be	I shall not be You will not be He She It We shall not be You They Will not be
动 词 have	I shall have You will have He She It We shall have You They We shall have	I shall not have You will not have He She It We shall not have You They Will not have

行为动词 study	I shall study You will study He She will study We shall study You will study	I shall not study You will not study He shall not study We shall not study You will not study
	$\left\{ egin{array}{ll} You \\ They \end{array} ight\}$ will study	You They will not study

	一般疑问	简略答语
	Will you be?	Yes, I will.
		No, I will not.
动词	Will he be?	Yes, he will.
be		No, he will not.
	Will they be?	Yes, they will.
}		No, they will not.
	Will you have?	Yes, I will.
		No, I will not.
动词	Will he have?	Yes, he will.
have		No, he will not.
	Will they have?	Yes, they will.
		No, they will not.
	Will you study?	Yes, I will.
Acc. 11 13	•	No, I will not.
行为动词	Will he study?	Yes, he will.
study		No, he will not.
	Will they study?	Yes, they will.
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	No, they will not.

[[]注一] will 常简略为 'll 与主语连写在一起, 如 I'll, he'll, it'll, we'll, you'll, they'll. 关于 shall 和 will 的否定简略式见 10.1. 的 2).

[[]注二] 一般疑问句如用 Will you ...? 其简略答语须是 Yes, I will 或 No, I will not; 如用 Shall you ...? (较为少见), 其简略答语须是 Yes, I shall 或 No, I shall not.

8.15 将来一般时的用法

- 1) 表示将来的动作或状态
 - I shall go back to see the poor and lower-middle peasants in the summer vacation. 暑假我要回去看望贫下中农。
 - Today we shall have a report on the situation in Africa. 我们今天有关于非洲形势的报告.
 - Tomorrow will be Friday. (也可以用现在一般时 is) 明天星期五.
 - He will come to see you the day after tomorrow. 他后天要来看你.
 - The indoor swimming pool will be open to the public from October 16. 室內游泳池定于十月十六日 开放
 - He will go to the technical training class every other day. 他将每隔一天到技术训练班去学习.
- 【注】 将来一般时常与一些表示将来的时间状语连用,如:tomorrow (明天), next week (下周), from now on (从现在开始), in a month (一个月后), in the future (将来) 等.
 - 2) 表示将来经常发生的动作 We shall come and work in this factory every year.

我们将每年到这工厂来劳动.

- 8. 16 其他表示将来的说法
- 1) "to be going + 动词不定式" 用于口语中较多,常表示要去做的事或可能要发生的事。

We are going to visit the Museum of Chinese History. 我们要去参观中国历史博物馆.

What are we going to see today? — We are going to see a gymnastic performance. 我们今天要看什么? ——看体操表演.

It is going to rain. 要下雨了.

The meeting is going to start at seven. 会议将在 七点开始.

There is going to be a slide show about Dr. Norman Bethune tonight. 今天晚上放映关于白求恩大夫的幻灯.

- 2) go, come, leave, start 等表示动作的动词,可用现在一般时来表示安排或计划好的将来的动作. 例见 8. 10的 2).
- 3) go, come, leave, start 等表示动作的动词,可用现在进行时来表示即将发生的动作。

When are you going back to your factory? 你什么时候回厂?

He is not coming. 他不来了,

They are leaving for Tibet. 他们就要到西藏去了.

4) "to be about + 动词不定式"表示即将发生的动作. The English evening is about to begin. 英语晚会即将开始.

We are about to leave, so there is no time to visit him now. 我们就要离开了,所以现在沒有时间去看他.

5) "to be +动词不定式"表示安排或计划好了的动作等. (参看 10.2 的 3))

The boys are to go to school next week. 这些男孩

、子下周要上学了.

He and I are to meet at the Peking Railway Station. 他和我约定在北京站见面。

- Our group is to study Imperialism, the Highest Stage of Capitalism this term. 本学期我们小组要学《帝国主义是资本主义的最高阶段》.
- 6) 将来进行时表示将会发生的动作. 例见 8.30 的 2) b).

(五) 过去将来一般时

8. 17 过去将来一般时的基本概念及其形式 过去将来一般时 (future-in-the-past indefinite tense) 表示对于过去某一时间而言将要发生的动作或存在的状态.

过去将来一般时由 should (第一人称) 和 would (第二、三人称) 加动词原形组成, 美国英语则不论什么人称, 一律用 would.

现以动词 go 为例将过去将来一般时的肯定和否定结构 **列**表如下:

肯 定	否 定
I should go. You would go. He She It We should go. You They Would go.	I should not go. You would not go. He She It We should not go. You They Would not go.

【注】 would 的简略式是 'd, 如 I'd, you'd, he'd. 关于 should 和 would 的否定简略式, 见 10.1 的 2).

- **8.** 18 **过去将来一般时的用法** 过去将来一般时常用 在宾语从句中。
 - I rang up to tell my aunt that I should leave for Inner Mongolia next Monday.我打电话告诉我妨母下星期一我要上內蒙古去
 - Brigade Leader Ma said that about twenty school graduates would come in a few days. 马大队长 说过几天大约二十个知识青年要来.
 - They wanted to know when you would finish the article. 他们想知道你什么时候写完这篇文章.
 - We asked him where we *should go* to work next week. 我们问他我们下周上哪儿去劳动.
 - [注一] 在实际运用中,过去将来的动作往往用 8.16 中各种说法的过去时表示,如上面第一、二、四句通常用下面的方式表示: 第一句的 should leave 由 was leaving 代替,第二句的 would come 由 were coming 代替,第四句的 should go 由 were going 代替.
 - [注二] 现代口语有时直接用 8.16 中的各种说法 (不改成过去时) 来表示 过去将来的动作。如上面第一句用 am leaving, 第二句用 are coming. 又如:

Wang told me that Workshop No. 5 is going to play Workshop No. 2 at basketball. 王告诉我五车间要限二车间赛篮球。

三、进行时态

(一) 概说

- 8. 19 基本概念 进行时态 (continuous tense) 表示在过去、现在或将来某一时刻或某段时间正在进行或发生的动作。
 - 8. 20 种类及形式 进行时态有现在进行时、过去进行

时、将来进行时、过去将来进行时四种,均由助动词 be 的三种一般时态的形式加现在分词构成。

现在进行时	过去进行时
I am going. You are going. He She is going. It We You are going. They	I was going. You were going. He She was going. It We You They We were going.
将来进行时 I shall be going. You will be going. He She will be going. It We shall be going. You will be going. You will be going.	过去将来进行时 I should be going. You would be going. He She She We should be going. You They Would be going.

- **8.** 21 一般时态与进行时态的区别 一般时态与进行时态的主要区别有二:
- 1) 一般时态通常表示经常的动作或状态,而进行时态则表示在某一时刻或某段时间正在进行着的动作:

We read newspapers every day. 我们每天读报.
She is now reading the newspaper. 她现在正在读报.

2) 一般时态表示主语的固有特征、能力等,而进行时态则表示主语在某一时刻或某段时间内所进行的具体动作;

He sings well. 他唱得很好.

He is singing a revolutionary song. 他正在唱一 首革命歌曲

[〔注〕 并不是所有的动词都能用进行时态。例如表达状态、感情和感觉的某些动词,通常只能用一般时态而不能用进行时态。因为这些动词不能表示一个正在进行的动作。例如 "know" (知道) 就不能用进行时态表示"正在知道"。这类动词有 be (是), have (有), love (爱), hate (恨), want (想要), like (喜欢), think (认为), believe (相信), see (看见), hear (听见)等。

(二) 现在进行时

8. 22 现在进行时的基本概念 现在进行时 (present continuous tense) 表示现在 (指说话人说话时) 正在进行的 动作. 如:

The young worker is cleaning the machine. 这个青年工人正在擦机器.

Is it snowing? 下雪了吗?

They are going to the fields. 他们正下地去.

8. 23 现在进行时的形式 现在进行时由助动词 am, are, is 加现在分词构成. 现以动词 go 为例, 将现在进行时的各种形式列表如下:

肯 定	否 定
I am going.	I am not going.
You are going.	You are not going.
He)	He
She is going.	She is not going.
It)	It)
We	We)
You are going.	You are not going.
They)	They

一般疑问	简略 答 语
Are you going?	Yes, I am. No, I am not.
Is he going?	Yes, he is. No, he is not.
Are they going?	Yes, they are. No, they are not.

8. 24 现在进行时的用法

1) 现在进行时表示此时此刻(说话人说话时)正在进行的动作,它并不表明这一动作从什么时候开始,到什么时候 结束,汉语常用"(正)在"或"着"来表示这种时间关系。

What are you doing? — I'm doing some washing. 你在干什么?我在洗衣服.

Secretary Wen is studying Anti-Duhring with the workers. 溫书记正和工人们一起学习《反杜林论》。

A group of workers, cadres and technicians are discussing how to raise production. 工人,干部和技术员正在讨论如何提高生产,

2) 现在进行时可表示现阶段正在进行着的动作,虽然此时此刻这个动作可能并不在进行.

The theoretical study group is working on a report. 理论小组正在写一篇报告.

They are compiling a Chinese-English dictionary. 他们在编一本汉英辞典.

3) 现在进行时有时可表示将来发生的动作 (用于 go, come, stay, leave, start 等表示动作的动词).

He is coming to see you tomorrow. 他明天要来看你.

They are going to the Ming Tombs this coming Sunday. 这个星期天他们要到十三陵去。

(三) 过去进行时

- 8. 25 过去进行时的基本概念 过去进行时 (past continuous tense) 表示过去某一时刻或某段时间正在进行的动作。
 - I was practising the violin at eight o'clock yesterday evening. 昨晚八点钟我正在练习小提琴。
 - When Hsiao Tung arrived home, his sister was doing her homework. 小冬到家时, 他妹妹正在做作 业,

She was watching TV all evening. 她整个晚上都在看电视.

8. 26 过去进行时的形式 过去进行时由 was (第一、三人称单数) 和 were (其余各人称和数) 加现在分词所构成,现以动词 go 为例列表如下:

肯 定	否 定
I was going.	I was not going.
You were going.	You were not going.
He)	He)
She was going.	She was not going.
It)	It)
We)	We)
You were going.	You were not going.
They	They

一般疑问	筒 略 答 语
Were you going?	Yes, I was.
	No, I was not.
Was he going?	Yes, he was.
	No, he was not.
Were they going?	Yes, they were.
	No, they were not.

8. 27 过去进行时的基本用法 表示在过去某一时刻或某一段时间正在进行的动作,这一特定的时间往往须用时间 状语来表示. 如:

She was reading an English magazine when I came in. 我进来时她在看一本英文杂志.

While we were talking with the team leader, the Party secretary came up. 我们正在和队长谈话时,党支书走了过来。

The commune members were ploughing in the fields all morning. 社员整个上午在耕地.

We were cleaning the auditorium from 7 to 9 last night. 昨晚七点到九点我们在打扫大礼堂.

8. 28 过去进行时的其他用法

1) 表示动作的动词 go, come, start, stay, leave 等的过去进行时,可以表示过去将来即将发生的动作.

They wanted to know when we were leaving for Tachai: 他们想知道我们什么时候到大寨去.

She asked whether he was starting the next day. 她 问他是否第二天就走。

2) 动词 go 的过去进行时态加动词不定式,可以表示在过去某一时间之后将要发生的动作. (比较 8.24 的 3))

Our team leader said we were going to set up a nursery. 我们生产队长说我们要设立一个托儿所,

She said the foreign guests were going to visit the Shanghai Industrial Exhibition. 她说外宾要去参观上海工业展览会。

The monitor announced that our new teacher was going to speak to us. 班长宣布新老师要跟我们 讲话.

3) 过去进行时可用来描写故事发生的背景.

It was a dark night. The wind was blowing hard and the rain was falling heavily. A young woman suddenly appeared on the river bank. It was Hsier. She had just escaped from Huang Shi-jen's house. 那是一个漆黑的夜晚. 风刮得很厉害,雨下得很大. 一个年轻妇女突然出现在河岸上. 这就是喜儿. 她刚从黄世仁的家里逃了出来.

8. 29 过去一般时与过去进行时用法比较 过去一般时通常表示过去发生的一个单纯的事实,而过去进行时则表示在过去某一时刻或某段时间正在进行的动作,强调在这一过程中所进行的动作或展开的情景 试比较:

We built a bridge last winter. 去冬我们修了一座桥. (意即去冬我们做了这件事,桥已经修好了.) We were building a hydro-electric station last winter. 去冬我们在修水电站. (意即去冬我们一直在修水电站,修完与否不详.)

- I wrote a letter home last night. 昨晚我写了一 封家信. (意即昨晚我做了这件事,信写完了.)
- I was writing a letter to my friend in the commune last night. 昨晚我给我在公社的朋友写信. (意即昨晚我一直在写信,不一定写完.)

(四) 将来进行时

- 8. 30 将来进行时的基本概念、形式和用法 将来进行时 (future continuous tense) 表示将来某一时刻或某一段时间正在进行的动作。
- 1) 将来进行时的形式 由助动词 be 的将来式,即 shall be (第一人称) 和 will be (第二、三人称),加现在分词 构成,现以动词 go 为例列表如下:

肯 定	否 定
I we shall be going.	I shall not be going.
He (she, it) You They Will be going.	He (she, it) You They Will not be going.

- 2) 将来进行时的用法
- a) 表示在将来某一时刻或某段时间正在进行的动作.
 This time tomorrow I shall be flying to Kwangchow.
 明天这个时候我将在飞往广州的途中.

What will you be doing at eight tomorrow morning? 明天上午八点钟你将作什么?

— I'll be working in the boiler room. 我将在锅 炉房工作.

- 1 *shall be waiting* for you in my room after supper. 我晚饭后将在房间里等你.
- Don't come at ten o'clock tomorrow; he will be working then. 不要在明天十点钟来,那时他将在工作。
- b) 即将或按计划在未来将要发生的动作.
 - We shall be having a meeting in a minute. 我们一会儿就要开会。
 - The spare time propaganda team will be putting on performances on May Day. 业余宣传队"五·一" 节要演出节目.

(五) 过去将来进行时

- 8. 31 过去将来进行时的基本概念、形式和用法 过去将来进行时 (future-in-the-past continuous tense) 表示在对过去某一时间而言的将来某一时刻或某一段时间正在进行的动作。
- 1) 过去将来进行时的形式 由 should be (第一人称) 和 would be (第二、三人称) 加现在分词构成. 现以动词 go 为例列表如下:

肯 定	否 定
I should be going.	I We should not be going.
He (she, it) You They Would be going.	He (she, it) You would not be going. They

- 2) 过去将来进行时的用法
- a) 表示在过去的将来的某一时刻或某段时间正在进行的动作。

He asked me what I should be doing at six the next day. 他问我第二天六点钟我要干什么.

They said that they would be expecting us the next week. 他们说他们下个星期等我们去.

b) 表示在过去某一时间之后即将进行的动作.

He said he could not come because he would be having a meeting. 他说他不能来,因为要开会.

四、完成时态

(一) 概说

- 8. 32 基本概念 完成时态 (perfect tense) 表示在过去、现在、将来的某一特定时间之前发生过或完成了的动作,而这一动作又往往与以后事态的发展有一定的关系。
- **8.** 33 **种类** 本书只讨论三种完成时态:现在完成时、过去完成时和将来完成时。

8. 34 形式

现在完成时	过去完成时
I have seen	I)
You have seen	You
He libes our	He
She has seen	She had seen
We	We
You have seen	You
They	They

将来完成时			
I shall have seen	i 		
You will have seen			
He She } will have seen			
We shall have seen			
You They } will have seen			

(二) 现在完成时

8. 35 现在完成时的基本概念及其形式 现在完成时 (present perfect tense) 表示动作发生在过去,但与现在情况 有关系,即用一个发生在过去的动作来说明现在的情况. 现在完成时是现在时态.

现在完成时由助动词 have (has) + 动词的过去分词构成。

现在完成时的肯定、否定、一般疑问句和简略答语结构 见下表:

肯 定	否 定
I You } have seen it. He She } has seen it. We You They } have seen it.	I You } have not seen it. He She } has not seen it. We You } have not seen it.

一般疑问	简 略 答 语
Have you seen it?	Yes, I have. No. I have not.
Has he seen it?	Yes, he has.
Have they seen it?	No, he has not. Yes, they have. No, they have not.

8. 36 现在完成时的基本用法

- 1) 表示动作到现在为止已经完成或刚 完成 汉语常用"了"来表示。
 - I have finished my work. 我把工作做完了.
 - We have set up many new factories. 我们建立了许多新工厂.
 - China has solved her food problem in the past quarter-century. 中国在过去四分之一世纪中解决了粮食问题.
 - 2) 动作在过去完成,表示"经验" 汉语常用"过"来表示. Have you ever seen the film Lenin in October? 你看过电影 《列宁在十月》吗?
 - Yes, I have seen it twice. -- 我看过两遍了.
 - I have spent three years on an army farm. 我在一个军星农场呆了三年.
 - [注] 注意 be 在下面句子中的意义:

Where have you been?--I've been to the laboratory.

你刚才上哪儿去了?——到实验室去了.

How have you been? -I've been very well, thank you.

你近来身体好吗?——谢谢你,我近来很好.

Have you ever been to Amoy?—No, I've never been there. 你到过厦门吗?——没到过.

- 8.37 现在完成时与过去一般时的区别 现在完成时和过去一般时都表示在过去完成的动作,但现在完成时强调这一动作与现在的关系,如对现在产生的结果、影响等,而过去一般时则表示动作发生在过去,不一定表示和现在的关系。试比较:
 - 1) I have lost my pen. 我把钢笔丢了. (意即还沒找到, 现在我沒有笔用.)
 - She lost her pen yesterday. 她昨天把笔丢了. (笔是昨天丢的,现在找到与否,沒有说明.)
 - 2) I have been to the Agricultural Exhibition. 我看过这个农业展览会. (强调我知道它的内容)
 - I went to the Agricultural Exhibition last week. 我上周参观了这个农业展览会. (只说明我上周参观过展览会这件事)
 - 3) Who has opened the door? 谁把门开了? (现在门还开着)
 - Who opened the door? 谁开的门?(指过去,与现在 无关. 现在门是关着还是开着,沒有说明.)
 - 4) A: Have you had your lunch? 你吃过午饭沒有? (意即你现在不饿吗?)
 - B: Yes, I have. 吃了. (意即我现在饱了,不要再吃了.)
 - A: When did you have it? 你什么时候吃的? (说话人感兴趣的是"吃"这一动作发生在什么时候。)
 - B: I had it about half an hour ago. 我是大约华小时前吃的.
 - 8.38 现在完成时的其他用法
 - 1) 还可表示动作发生在过去, 并且一直延续到现在, 甚

至还可能继续延续下去。这时常和 since 所引导的短语或从 句或 for 引导的短语连用 (for 有时可以省去).

How long have you been in Peking? — I have been in Peking for four years. 你在北京呆了多久? ——我在北京呆了四年.

Hsiao Wang's father has been a village cadre since the land reform in 1948. 小王的父亲从一九四八年土地改革以来一直当村干部.

Since the liberation new things have appeared one after another. 解放以来新生事物层出不穷.

Four years have passed since I joined the army. 我参军以来,四年已经过去了.

【注】 但在下面的句子中,主句的谓语动词习惯上须用现在一般时:

It is three years since I began to work on the state farm. 我在国营农场工作已经三年了.

It's a long time since I saw you last. 好久没见了.

2) 在条件、时间状语从句中表示将来完成的动作.
I'll go with you as soon as I have finished my work.
我工作结束了马上就跟你一块儿去.

8.39 现在完成时的时间状语问题

1) 现在完成时说明的是现在的情况,是现在时态,因此不能和表示过去时间的状语如 yesterday, last month, three years ago, in 1960 等连用. 这些时间状语只能和过去时态连用,表示过去的动作.

The War of Liberation began in 1946. 解放战争于 一九四六年开始,

Last year my sister was admitted into the Chinese Communist Party. 去年我妹妹加入了中国共产党。

We had a get-together in Chungshan Park on National Day. 国庆节,我们在中山公园举行游园会,

但现在完成时可和表示过去时间的副词 just 和 before 连用,如:

He has just come. 他刚到.

We have seen the film before. 我们以前看过这个电影.

2) 现在完成时常和表示不确定的时间的副词 already, often, never, ever, always, yet, not ... yet 等连用.

Have you ever worked in a coal mine? 你在煤矿 里工作过吗?

The new books have not arrived yet. 新书还沒有到.

The Hsisha Islands have always been Chinese territory. 西沙群岛一直是中国的领土.

Have they finished spreading manure yet? 他们施 完肥了吗?

Their workshop has *already* fulfilled the production quota for the first quarter of the year. 他们车间已经完成了第一季度的生产.

Many westerners have never seen a giant panda. 许多四方人从沒见过大熊猫.

3) 现在完成时可以和包括"现在"在内的时间状语迹 用,如 now, today, this month, this year 等.

> Our workshop has made fifty new lathes this month. 我们车间这个月造了五十台新车床.

We have planted many fruit trees *this year*. 今年 我们栽了很多果树

但如说话人所感兴趣的只是在这段时间内发生了某一动作,而不是这一动作与现在的关系时,须用过去时态。如: The conference *opened* this month. 会议是本月开幕的。

Their brigade set up a pumping station this year. 他们大队今年新修了一个抽水站。

8.40 现在完成时可和疑问副词 where, why, how 连用,但通常不和疑问副词 when 连用 when 一般只与过去时态连用

Where have you been? 你去哪儿了? (询问经过情况) 如说 Where did you go? 你刚才到哪里去了? (只问地点)

Why have you turned off the radio? 你干吗把收音机关了?(强调和现在的关系,意即收音机关着)

如说 Why did you turn off the radio? 则强调关收音机这一过去的动作。

(三) 过去完成时

8. 41 过去完成时的基本概念及其形式 过去完成时 (past perfect tense) 表示在过去某一时间或动作以前已经完成了的动作。简言之,过去完成时所表示的时间就是"过去的过去".

过去完成时由助动词 had + 动词的过去分词构成.

过去完成时在肯定、否定、一般疑问**句和简略**答语等四种结构中的形式如下:

肯 定	否 定
You He (she, they)	You had not seen it.
一般疑问	简 略 答 语
. Had you seen it?	Yes, I had. No. I had not.
Had he seen it?	Yes, he had. No, he had not.
Had they seen it?	Yes, they had. No, they had not.

8.42 过去完成时的用法

1) 过去完成时表示在过去某一时间或动作以前已经完成了的动作,这个过去的时间可以用 by, before 等介词短语或一个时间状语从句来表示。

By the end of 1958 we had set up many people's communes. 到一九五八年底我们已经建立了许多人民公社.

- Lao Wang had learned some English before he came to the institute. 老王来学院之前学过一些英语.
- I didn't go to the film because I had seen it twice. 我沒去看电影,因为这片子我已看过两次了,
- When I had gone over my lessons I took a rest. 我 复习完功课之后,休息了一会儿.
- Lao Li told the children that he had suffered a great deal before liberation. 老李告诉这些孩子们他解放前受过很多苦。

When the Red Army had got to northern Shensi, Lu

Hsun sent a message to Chairman Mao saying, "On you is placed the hope of China and man-kind." 当红军到达陕北时,鲁迅给毛主席一封贺电说: "在你们身上寄托着人类和中国的将来:"

2) 过去完成时可以表示由过去某一时间开始,一直延续到过去另一时间的动作,常和 for (for 有时可以省去) 或 since 构成的短语或 since 引导的从句连用.

It rained yesterday after it had been dry for many months. 在天旱了好几个月之后,昨天下雨了.

By the time Wuhan was liberated in 1949, my father had worked in the factory for thirty years.

一九四九年武汉解放时,我父亲在工厂里已工作了三十年.

[注] 当一个由 before, after, as soon as 等连词引导的从句所表示的 动作和主句的动作紧接时, 由于这些连词本身已经说明两个动作发生 的先后关系,因此两个动作均可用"过去一般时"来表示. 如:

We had breakfast after we did morning exercises. 做完早操后, 我们吃早饭.

The train started to move just before he reached the platform. 他 到月台时火车刚开走.

The commune members started ploughing as soon as they got to the fields. 社员们一到地里就开始犁地。

(四) 将来完成时

8.43 将来完成时的基本概念及其形式 将来完成时 (future perfect tense) 表示在将来某一时间之前所完成的动作。它的形式由 shall (第一人称) 或 will (第二、三人称) 加 have 再加过去分词所构成。将来完成时的肯定和否定形式见下表;

肯 定	否 定
I shall have seen it.	I shall not have seen it.
You)	You)
He will have seen it.	He will not have seen it.
She)	She)
We shall have seen it.	We shall not have seen it.
You They will have seen it.	You They will not have seen it.

8. 44 **将来完成时的用法** 将来完成时表示在将来某一时间以前已经完成的动作。

By the end of this month we shall have studied ten lessons. 到本月底, 我们将学完十课书.

By this time tomorrow they will have repaired the machine. 明天这时候, 他们将修好这台机器.

Our brigade will have completed the canal by the time you come back next year. 到你明年回来时,我们大队的水渠将已经修好.

When you come tonight at eight o'clock, I shall have written my report. 你今晚八点钟来时,我会写完报告了.

五、完成进行时态

(一) 概说

- 8. 45 基本概念 完成进行时态 (perfect continuous tense) 表示动作在现在或过去某一时间以前开始,并延续到那个现在或过去的时间,而且可能还要继续进行下去。
 - 8. 46 种类 完成进行时有现在完成进行时和过去完

成进行时两种.

8.47 形式

现在完成进行时	过去完成进行时
I have been working. You have been working. He } has been working. She	You He She had been working.
You have been working. They	We You They

(二) 现在完成进行时

8.48 现在完成进行时的形式 现在完成进行时 (present perfect continuous tense) 在肯定、否定、一般疑问和 简略答语等四种结构中的形式如下:

肯 定	否 定
You have been working. He She has been working. We You have been working.	You have not been working. He She has not been working. We You have not been working.
They) - 般疑问	They
	簡略答语
Have you been working?	Yes, I have.
Has he been working?	No, I have not. Yes, he has. No, he has not.
Have they been working?	Yes, they have. No, they have not.

8.49 现在完成进行时的用法

- 1) 表示动作从过去某一时间开始一直延续到现在,现在 这个动作可能刚刚终止,也可能仍然在进行着,
 - 1 have been waiting for you for two hours. 我等了 你两个小时. (动作不再延续下去)
 - It has been raining for three hours. 兩已经下了三 小时了。(动作仍延续)
 - They have been studying Chairman Mao's philosophical works these three weeks. 这三周来他们一直在学习毛主席的哲学著作. (动作延续与否,由上下文决定.)
 - He has been working on the paper all day. 他整天都在写论文. (动作是否延续下去,由上下文决定.) She has been learning her lessons since morning. 她从早上起一直在学习功课. (动作可能在延续)
- 2) 有些不能用现在进行时态的动词,如 be, have, like, love, know, see, hear 等,同样也不能用现在完成进行时,而只能用现在完成时。

She has been ill for a long time. 她已经病了好久了, I have not seen you for ages. 我好久沒有见到你了。

8. 50 现在完成进行时和现在完成时的比较

- 1. 现在完成时所表示的动作,到现在为止已经完成,或者在过去曾经发生过;现在完成进行时往往表示动作仍然继续下去. 如:
 - I have been reading Lu Hsun this week. 本周我一

直在读鲁迅的著作. (我仍然在读.)

- I have read A Madman's Diary this week. 我本周读了《狂人日记》. (我本周开始读而且已经读完它了。)
- I have read The Story of Ah Q before. 我以前读过 《阿Q正传》. (过去经历)
- The movement to learn from Taching has been going on throughout the country, and it has brought about great changes in industry in China. 学习大庆的运动一直在全国进行,它已经给中国工业带来了巨大的变化.
- 2. 有时,现在完成进行时可表示刚刚结束的动作. 这时这个时态和现在完成时的区别在于: 现在完成时强调动作的结果,现在完成进行时则强调动作在不久以前持续进行的情景,并常有感情色彩. 如:

Now we have cleaned the room, we can move the things in. 房间已打扫过了,我们可以把东西搬进去了.(强调打扫完了的结果)

- You look so tired. What have you been doing? 你看来很累的样子, 你干什么来着?
- I've been playing football.我踢足球了.

(三) 过去完成进行时

- 8. 51 过去完成进行时 (past perfect continuous tense)
- 1) 过去完成进行时的形式 一律为 had been + 现在分词,无人称和数的区别. 它的肯定和否定结构见下表:

	肯	定		否	定
I You He She We You They	had bee	n working.	I You He She We You They	had not b	een working.

2) 过去完成进行时的用法 过去完成进行时 表示 动作在过去某一时间之前开始并延续到过去这个时间,这一动作可能还在进行,也可能已经停止

He told me that he had been waiting for me for two hours. 他对我说他等了我两小时. (动作不再延续) By the time Shanghai was liberated, he had been working in this factory for more than ten years. 到上海解放时,他在这工厂已经工作了十多年. (动作可能还在进行)

六、时态的一致

- 8.52 定义 某些从句 (主要是宾语从句) 中谓语动词的时态,常常受主句中谓语动词时态的影响,这叫做时态的一致 (sequence of tenses).
- **8.** 53 **主句中的谓语动词如为现在或将来时态时** 从句中的谓语动词可以用任何所需要的时态。

He says his father is (was, will be) an engineer. 他 说他父亲是(过去是,将来要做)一个工程师.

Can you tell me when you finished (will finish) the work? 你可否告诉我你什么时候完成 (会完成)这项工作?

- 8. 54 主句中的谓语动词如为过去时态时 从句中的谓语动词一般须用过去时态。这又可分为下面三种情况:
- 1) 如果从句里的谓语动词所表示的动作与主 句的 谓语 动词所表示的动作同时发生,从句须用过去一般时或过去进 行时.

He told me he was unwell. 他告诉我他不大舒服. My father told me in his letter that our brigade was building terraced fields. 我父亲写信告诉我,我们大队在修梯田.

2) 如果从旬的谓语动词所表示的动作发生在主旬的谓语动词所表示的动作之前,从旬须用过去完成时.如:

He said he had posted the letter. 他说他已经把信发了.

The old worker told us how he and his fellow-workers had fought against the capitalists before liberation. 这位老工人告诉我们他和别的工人解放前跟资本家斗爭的情况.

3) 如果从旬的谓语动词所表示的动作在主句的谓语动词所表示的动作之后,从旬的谓语动词须用过去将来时态.如:

They did not know when they would go to the Great Wall. 他们不知道什么时候去参观长城.

He said he was going to be a docker after leaving school. 他说他毕业后要当码头工人,

- [注] 主句的谓语动词如是过去时态,则还须注意下面两种特殊情况:
 - 1) 从句所说明的如果是一般真理,则仍用现在时态.如:

The teacher *told* the pupils that the earth *is* round. 教员告诉学生地球是圆的.

2) 从句如果有表示某一具体时间的状语,谓语动词所表示的动作虽 发生在主句的谓语动词所表示的动作之前,有时仍用过去一般时,不用 过去完成时. 如:

The teacher *told* his pupils that the Chinese Communist Party was founded in Shanghai in 1921. 教员告诉学生中国共产党于一九二一年在上海诞生.

My father *told* me that my grandfather was born in 1900. 我 父亲告诉我,我祖父生于一九○○年.

第九章 语态

9.1 语态 (voice)

- 1) 语态的基本概念 语态是动词的一种形式,用来说明主语和谓语动词之间的关系.
- 2) 语态的种类 英语 动词有两种语态: 主动语态 (active voice) 和被动语态 (passive voice). 主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者,被动语态表示主语是动作的承受者. 本章着重讲被动语态.
- 9.2 被动语态的基本概念 被动语态是动词的一种特殊形式,表示句子中的主语是动作的承受者,也就是动作的对象.一般说来,只有需要动作对象的及物动词才有被动语态.汉语往往用"被"、"受"、"给"等词来表示被动意义.
- 9.3 被动语态的形式 英语动词的被动语态由助动词 be 加及物动词的过去分词构成 助动词 be 有时态、人称和数的变化,其变化规则与连系动词 be 完全一样.

现以 ask 为例,将各种人称、数和时态的被动语态列表如下:

	— 般	完	成	进	行
	I am asked	I	have been	I am be	ing asked
	You are asked	You	asked	You are	being asked
现	He } is asked	He	has been	He	is being
	She Is asked	She	asked	She	asked
在	We)	We	h	We)
	You are asked	You	have been asked	You	are being asked
	They	They		They	

过去	I was asked You were asked He \ was asked We \ You \ They \ were asked	You He She We You They	had been asked	I was being asked You were being asked He \ was being She \ asked We \ You \ They \ asked	
将来	You He She She We shall be asked You Will be They asked				
过去将来	I should be asked You He asked We should be asked You would be They asked				The community of the second of

- 〔注〕 英语主动语态的时态有十六个, 而被动语态的常用时态只有上图 八个。
- 9.4 被动语态的一般疑问句和否定结构 构成被动语 · 态的一般疑问句时,须将第一个助动词移至主语之前;构成

被动语态的否定结构时,助动词后须加 not. 现以 write 为 例将被动语态各个时态的陈述、否定、一般疑问、简略答语 等结构列表如下:

\prod	— 般	完 成	进 行
现在	It is written. It is not written. Is it written? Yes, it is. No, it is not.	It has been written. It has not been written. Written. Has it been written; Yes, it has. No, it has not.	It is being written. It is not being written. Is it being written. Yes, it is. No, it is not.
过去	It was written. It was not written. Was it written? Yes, it was. No, it was not.	It had been written. It had not been written. Had it been written? Yes, it had. No, it had not.	It was being written. It was not being written. Was it being written? Yes, it was. No, it was not.
将来	It will be written. It will not be written. Will it be written? Yes, it will.		
过去将来	No, it will not. It would be written. It would not be written. Would it be written? Yes, it would. No, it would not.		

9.5 各种时态的被动语态举例

1) 现在一般时

Football *is played* all over the world. 全世界到处都踢足球.

First-class bicycles are made in Tientsin. 天津生产第一流的自行车.

Comrade Li, you are wanted on the phone. 李同志, 你有电话

English is spoken in Britain, the U.S. and some other countries. 英国、美国和其他一些国家讲英语。

2) 过去一般时

The Great Hall of the People was built in 1959. 人民大会堂是在一九五九年修建的.

His leg was broken in an accident. 他的腿在一次事故中折断了.

The Internationale was written in 1871 by Eugene Pottier, the French worker-poet. 《国际歌》是法国工人诗人欧仁・鲍狄埃于一八七一年创作的・

3) 将来一般时

More factories will be built in my home town. 我的家乡将要建更多的工厂

He will be taken to hospital tomorrow. 他明天将 被送到医院去.

The children will be well looked after in the kindergarten. 这些小孩将会在幼儿园得到很好的照顾。

4) 现在完成时及过去完成时

- On Practice has been translated into many foreign languages. 《实践论》已经译成许多国家的文字。
- By 1972 a co-operative medical system *had been set* up in all the communes in this area. 到一九七 二年这个地区所有的公社都建立了合作医疗制度.
- When the anthem had been played, the Congress began. 奏完国歌后,大会开始.

5) 现在进行时及过去进行时

Two ocean-going freighters are being built at the shipyard. 这个造船厂正在建造两艘新的远洋货轮.

Rice is being grown in the mountain areas where water used to be scarce. 在过去缺水的山区种上了水稻.

The last time I went back to my home town, a big power station was being built there. 上次我回家乡时,那儿正在修建一所大发电站.

9.6 主动语态变为被动语态

- 1) 将句子的主动结构变成被动结构时,先把主动结构的 宾语变为被动结构的主语(如为代词,宾格形式须变为主格 形式)
 - 2) 然后把主动结构的动词由主动语态变成被动语态.
- 3) 然后在动词被动语态之后加介词 by, 再将主动结构 中的主语放在 by 之后,变成 by 的宾语 (如为代词,主格形式须变为宾格形式).

主	zij	活	杰

Everybody likes the cook. 大家

动 The cook is liked by everybody.

语 太

被

都喜欢这个炊事员. He wrote a letter. 他写了一封信. We shall mechanize the workshops. 我们将使这些车间机械化。 The commune has set up many workshops.公社设立了许多工厂. They are building a road. 他们 正在修建一条路.

A letter was written by him. The workshops will be mechanized (by us).

Many workshops have been set up by the commune.

A road is being built (by them).

〔注〕by 短语有时可省去,上面例句中括号内的部分即表示可以省略的 by 短语.

- 9. 7 被动语态的用法 被动语态常用于下列几种情况:
- 1) 当我们不知道谁是动作的执行者,或者沒有必要指 出谁是动作的执行者时,如:

Printing was introduced into Europe from China. Ell 剧术是从中国传入欧洲的. (不知道是谁传去的)

- She is honoured for her communist spirit. 她的共产主义风格而受到尊敬 (受到谁的尊敬不 必讲出)
- Many skilled workers have been trained in the factory. 这个工厂培养了许多熟练工人. (谁训练的 不必讲 出)
- Farm tools are being sent to the countryside. 农县正 在运往农村. (沒有必要说出谁在运这些农具)
- A small water power station will be built in the mountain area. 山区将要修建一个小水电站.(不 必说出谁将修建这个水电站)

- We were asked to sing a song. 我们被要求唱支歌· (重点在我们,而不在哪些人提出要求·)
- 2) 当我们既关心动作的承受者也关心动作的执行者时。 (在这种情况下,用 by 加动作执行者来表示)如: The song "The East Is Red" was written by a poor peasant. 《东方红》这首歌是一个贫农写的。
 - China's first peasant uprising was led by Chen Sheng and Wu Kuang. 中国的第一次农民起义是陈胜和 吳广领导的.
 - Several million tons of steel are turned out by Shanghai steel workers every year. 上海钢铁工人每年生产几百万吨钢。
- 9.8 短语动词的被动语态 通常只有及物动词才有被动语态,但有些短语动词在意义上相当于及物动词,所以也有被动语态 短语动词在主动结构中是一个不可分割的词组,在被动结构中也是如此,不可丢掉后面的介词或副词 现将短语动词的被动语态分为四类,叙述如下:
- 1) 动词+介词 如: look at (看), laugh at (笑话), send for (派人去请), depend on (依靠), call on (号召, 访问), listen to (听) 等.

主 动 语 态	被 动 语 态
We have sent for the doctor.	The doctor has been sent for.
我们派人请大夫去了.	已经(派人)请大夫去了。

2) 动词十名词十介词 如: take care of (照顾), pay attention to (注意), make use of (利用) 等.

主 动 语 态	被动语态
The nurse takes good care of the children. 阿姨很好地照顾小 孩.	The children are taken good care of by the nurse. 孩子们受到阿姨很好的照顾.

3) 动词+副词 如: carry out (实行), hand down (传下来), put on (穿上), take off (脫下), look up (查阅), give up (放弃) 等.

主 动 语 态	被动语态
They have successfully carried out the Party's policy. 他们很好地贯彻了党的政策.	The Party's policy has been successfully carried out. 党的政策 得到了很好的贯彻。

4) 动词+副词+介词 如: look down upon (看不起), do away with (去掉), put up with (忍受) 等.

主动语态	被 动 语 态
People looked down upon women	Women were looked down upon
in the past. 过去人们轻视妇女.	in the past. 妇女在过去受轻视.

9.9 含有情态动词的被动语态 含有情态动词的被动结构是: 情态动词+be+及物动词的过去分词. 如:

Taiwan must be liberated. 一定要解放台湾.

The plan ought to be put into practice as soon as possible. 计划必须尽早执行.

9.10 含有两个宾语的主动结构变为被动结构 主动结构中若有两个宾语,变为被动结构时,只将其中一个宾语变成主语,另一个宾语(一般称为保留宾语)不变.如:

We gave him some books. 我们给了他一些书.

He was given some books (by us). 或 Some books were given to him (by us).

- [注] 含有两个宾语的主动结构变为被动结构时, 英语一般都是把代表人 的宾语(即间接宾语)变为主语.
- 9.11 含有复合宾语的主动结构变为被动结构 主动 结构中如有复合宾语,变为被动结构时,只将复合宾语中的 逻辑主语 (即宾语,参见16.15) 变成主语, 其余部分不动. tn:

被动语态
She was advised to take the medicine.
He was found working in the fields.
The baby was named Hsiao

9. 12 被动语态和"连系动词 to be + 作表语用的过 去分词"(简称系表结构)的区别

"to be+过去分词"可能是被动语态,也可能是"系表 结构". 其主要差别在于: 被动语态表示动作, 句子主语为 动作的对象,而系表结构则说明主语所处的状态,其中的过 去分词相当于形容词, 因此被动语态可以有各种时态, 而系 表结构中 be 只有一般和完成时态. 如:

被动语态

系表结构

The children were dressed The children were beauand taken out for a walk. 给孩子们穿好衣 服幷把他们带出去散步. 子们穿得很漂亮.

tifully dressed for Children's Day. 儿童节孩

The composition was written with great care. written. 这篇作文写得
这篇作文写得很仔细. 很好.

〔注一〕 下面是另一些包括系表结构的例句:

The criticism meeting is well organized. 批判会组织得很好。

The door is locked. 门锁了.

This test-tube is broken. 这支试管破了.

The gun is loaded. 枪装上子弹了.

[注二] 被动语态还有一种 "to get+过去分词" 的结构. 这种结构比较口语化. 如:

He got wounded in the Battle of Tientsin. 他在天津战役中负了伤。

Comrade Wang got married last week. 王同志上周结婚了。

第十章 助动词

一、概说

10.1 概说

- 1) 英语常用的助动词 (auxiliary verb) 有 shall, will, should, would, be, have, do 等. 助动词一般无词义, 不能单独作谓语动词. 助动词在句中的作用, 在于帮助构成各种时态,语态,语气,否定和疑问结构等. 如:
 - At present, the world revolution has entered a great new era. 当前,世界革命进入了一个伟大的新时代.(帮助构成完成时态)
 - Some boys are playing on the grass. 一些男孩正在 草地上玩 (帮助构成进行时态)
 - Mother is written by Gorky. 《母亲》是高尔基写的。 (帮助构成被动语态)
 - We shall have the football match if it does not rain. 如果不下雨,我们就赛足球. (帮助构成将来时态和否定结构)
 - Do you see my point? 你明白我的意思吗? (帮助构成疑问结构)
 - 【注】 在否定结构中, not 须放在助动词后面.
 - 2) 助动词加 not 一般都有简略式,用于口语中. 如:

is not —isn't would not—wouldn't
are not —aren't [a:nt] have not—haven't
was not —wasn't has not —hasn't
were not —weren't [wa:nt] had not —hadn't
shall not —shan't [fa:nt] do not —don't [dount]
will not —won't [wount] does not —doesn't
should not—shouldn't did not —didn't

二、be

- **10.** 2 be 助动词 be 的形式变化和动词 be (见 8. 5) 同. be 作为助动词的用法有下列几种:
 - 1) be 后跟动词的现在分词 可以构成各种进行时态.如: The driver is cleaning the car. 司机在擦车.
 - Yesterday afternoon we were discussing a new teaching plan. 昨天下午我们在讨论新教学计划.
 - Women in our country are playing an important part in socialist construction. 我国妇女在社会主义建设中正起着重要的作用.
 - 2) be 后跟动词的过去分词 可以构成被动语态. 如: A lot of consumer goods are made of nylon. 许多消费品都是尼龙作的.
 - The First National Conference on Learning from Tachai was held in the autumn of 1975. 第一次全国农业学大寨会议于一九七五年秋召开.
 - The cinema will be closed for repair from March 3rd. 影院自三月三日起修理內部停止营业.

- 3) be 加动词不定式 往往表示下列各种情况的动作.
- a) 未来的安排或计划. 如:

The delegation is to leave for Shanghai tomorrow. 代表团定于明天去上海.

A worker from the Takang Oilfield was to give a report the next day. 大港油田的一位工人定于 次日来作报告.

b) 必要或命令或问对方的意志. 如:

You are to report for duty at the headquarters on Monday. 你必须在星期一去总部报到.

Where am I to put these farm tools? 这些农具应 该放在什么地方?

What is to be done? 怎么办?

You're to hand in your exercises tomorrow. 你们 明天要交练习.

- c) "可能", 与 can 或 may 相仿. 如:
 - I am not sure whether he is to turn up tonight. 我 不能断定他今晚是否能来.
 - My key is nowhere to be found. 我哪儿也找不着我的钥匙.

[注一] 关于 be 作连系动词的用法, 可参看 7.3 的 2).

[注二] 关于 am, are, is 的简略式, 见 17.2 的[注].

三、have

10. 3 have have 的过去式是 had. have 作为助动词 时和动词的过去分词一起,构成各种完成时态. 如:

He has not made up his mind yet. 他还沒有决定呢. The people of Tachai have always followed Chairman Mao's teachings on self-reliance and hard struggle. 大寨人一直遵循毛主席的自力更生和艰苦奋斗的教导.

By the time the school graduates reached the village, the brigade had got everything ready for them. 知识青年到达村子时,大队已经为他们作好了一切准备.

By the end of 1977, the students of the workers' college had studied physics and calculus. 到一九七七年底,工人大学的学生已学完物理学和微积分. [注] have 的简略式是 've, has 的简略式是 's, had 的简略式是 'd, 如 I've, you've, he's, I'd, we'd, he'd, they'd 等.

四、do

- 10. 4 do do 的过去式是 did. do 作为助动词, 有下列一些用法:
 - 1) 构成现在一般时和过去一般时的疑问句和否定句 Do you know each other? 你们两人认识吗? She did not go to town after breakfast. She went to the canal instead. 她早饭后沒有进城,到运河去了.

How do you find the climate here? 你觉得这里的 气候怎么样?

2) 构成否定的祈使句
Do not hesitate to come when you need help. 有困

难只管来.

Don't be so careless. 不要那么粗枝大叶.

3) 加强陈述句和祈使句的语气

I do think he is right. 我确实认为他是对的.

Do come often. 千万常来.

Do ask, if you have any questions. 如果有问题, 务必提出.

4) 用于倒装句中

Only then *did* 1 understand the importance of productive labour. 只是到了那时,我才了解到生产劳动的重要性。

Never *did* I expect to see him there. 我从未想到 会在那里看到他.

5) 还可用来代替主要动词,以避免重复. 较常用在简略 答语中.

Does he also study geography? 他也学地理吗?

— No, he does not. 不, 他不学地理.

Did you make friends with many commune members when you were in the countryside? 你在乡下时和很多社员交朋友了吗?

一 Yes, I did. 是的, 我和社员交朋友了.

He works even harder than you do. 他比你还要用功.

五、shall 和 will

10.5 shall 助动词 shall 本身沒有词义,只用在第一

人称的将来时态中、在将来一般时中, shall 后接动词原形。如:

I shall think it over. 我要好好考虑一下,

We shall never forget the day when we saw Chairman Mao. 我们将永远不会忘记见到毛主席的那一天,

10. 6 will 助动词 will 本身沒有词义, 只用在第二、三人称的将来时态中. will 在将来一般时中后接动词原形 如;

The future of the world will be bright. 世界的前途总是光明的。

He will be twenty-five years old next month. 他下个月将是二十五岁。

You will have an examination in English tomorrow. 你们明天有英语考试.

The weather forecast says that there'll be heavy rain tomorrow. 天气预报明天有大雨.

〔注〕 关于 will 的简略式见 8.14 的〔注一〕.

六、should 和 would

- 10. 7 should 助动词 should 是 shall 的过去式,它本身沒有词义,用于第一人称的过去将来时态中. should 在过去将来一般时中后接动词原形. (参看 8. 17)
- 10.8 would 助动词 would 是 will 的过去式,它本身没有词义,用于第二、三人称的过去将来时态中. would 在过去将来一般时中后接动词原形. 如:

It was reported that the Korean Government Delegation would come to Peking today. 据报导朝鲜政 府代表团将于今日前来北京,

The team leader said that they would start cutting wheat on June 15. 生产队长说他们六月十五日开始割小麦

【注】 关于 should, would 在虚拟语气中作助动词的用法, 见第十二章。

第十一章 情态动词

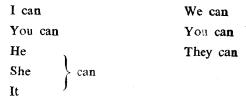
一、概说

11. 1 特征

- 1) 情态动词 (modal verb) 本身有词义,表示说话人的语气或情态,但词义不完全,不能单独作谓语动词,只能和不带 to 的动词不定式 (ought 等除外) 一起构成谓语动词.
- 2) 情态动词所表示的情态有: 命令、允诺、请求、拒绝、 愿望、愿意、义务、必要、可能、能力、敢于、需要等.
- 3) 情态动词 (ought 除外) 和助动词 shall, will, should, would 一样, 后面的动词不定式一律不带 to.

11. 2 形式变化

1) 沒有人称和数的变化,第三人称单数的现在时也无变化. 如:



- 2) 有些情态动词有过去式,有的过去式和它的原形相同.
 - a) 有过去式的情态动词有:

will — would dare — dared

can — could need — needed may — might have to — had to

shall - should

b) 过去式不变的情态动词有:

must — must (或 had to)
ought to — ought to

3) 大多数情态动词后面可用动词不定式的进行式、完成 式和被动形式,如:

can, may, must — be doing, have done, be done should, would, might — be doing, have done, be done

11. 3 否定式 情态动词和助动词一样,后面可直接跟否定词 not. 现将情态动词的否定式及其否定式的简略式(简略式用于口语中)列举如下:

shall not — shan't [saint]

will not — won't [wount]

cannot - can't [ka:nt]

must not — mustn't ['masnt]

should not - shouldn't

would not - wouldn't

could not - couldn't

dare not - daren't [dsant]

need not - needn't

11. 4 **在疑问句中的用法** 情态动词在疑问句中的用法 和助动词相同, 但可在不同的表达方式中表达 不同的 情态 如:

May I ask you a question? 我可以问你一个问题吗?

Can you lend me your dictionary for a minute? 你 能把字典借我用一会儿吗?

Would you like to visit the heavy machinery plant? 你要参观重型机器厂吗?

注意 have to 在疑问句中的位置:

Do you *have to* go out today? 你今天一定得出去吗? Does he *have to* finish the work tomorrow? 他明 天非做完这项工作不可吗?

二、can 和 could

11. 5 can 的词义 表示体力或脑力方面的"能力",或根据客观条件能做某种动作的"能力",如:

Can you ride a bike? 你能骑自行车吗?

What can I do for you? 我能为你做什么吗?

Can you use chopsticks? 你会用筷子吗?

Most peasants in this commune can read and write now. 这个公社的多数农民都学了文化.

In our socialist country even barren mountains can be turned into fertile fields. 在我们社会主义国家里, 荒山也能变成良田

11. 6 can 用在否定句和疑问句中时 在这种句子中, can 有时表示说话人的"怀疑"、"猜测"或"不肯定". 如:

Where can he be? 他会在什么地方呢?

Can the news be true? 这个消息会是真的吗?

It surely *can't* be six o'clock already? 不可能已经 六点钟了吧! You can't be hungry so soon, Tom. You've just had lunch? 汤姆, 你不可能饿得这么快, 你刚吃过午饭.

Chang cannot be so careless. 张不可能这么粗心. What can he mean? 他会是什么意思呢?

- 【注一〕 can 加动词不定式的进行时态, 也可表示"怀疑"、"不肯定". 如: What can he be doing all this time; 他一直会是在干什么呢? She cannot be playing ping-pong now. 她现在不可能在打乒乓球.
- 【注二】 在日常会话中, can 可代替 may 表示 "允许", may 比较正式.如: You can drop in any time. 你随时都可以来串门. Can I use your basin?—Of course, you can. 我可以用你的 脸盆吗?——当然可以.

You can have my seat, I'm going now. 我要走了, 你坐我的座位吧.

- 11.7 could could 是 can 的过去式,表示与过去有关的 1)能力和 2)可能、怀疑或不肯定 (在否定和疑问句中).如:
 - 1) We were sure that he *could* do the work. 我们肯定他能做这工作.
 - Kao Yu-pao's father was a farmhand. He could not afford to send his son to school. 高玉宝的父亲 是个雇农. 他供不起儿子上学.
 - 2) At that time we thought the story *could* not be true. 那时我们以为所说的事不可能是真的.
 - 【注】 could 可代替 can 表示现在时间的动作,但语气较为婉转.如:

Could you help me with my English pronunciation? 你帮助 我学英语语音好吗? Could you persuade him to join our chorus? 你能说服他参加 我们的合唱团吗?

Could we visit a kindergarten? I've been wanting to see one ever since I came to China. 我们可以访问一个幼儿园吗? 我自从到中国来以后,一直想看一所幼儿园.

Could you? 在口语中表示请求对方做事,如:

Could you wait half an hour? 请你等半个小时好吗?

Could you please ring again at six? 六点钟请你再打电话好吗?

11.8 can 的形式 can 只有现在式 can 和过去式 could 两种形式,能表示现在一般和过去一般两种时态,有时也能表示将来,所有其他时态(包括将来)须用 to be able 加动词不定式来表示.如:

With the help of other communes, we *shall be able* to build the reservoir in a few months. 有其他 公社的协助,我们将能在几个月后修好水库.

They have not been able to come to Peking. 他们 沒有能到北京来.

Comrade Li rang up just now to say that he won't be able to come over this evening. 李同志刚来电话,说今天晚上他来不了

11.9 can,could 用于否定或疑问句中 can (could) 用于否定或疑问句中后面跟动词不定式的完成式时,表示对过去发生事件的"怀疑"或"不肯定"。而 could 较 can 更加表示说话人的"不肯定"的语气。如:

Can he have left already? 他会是走了吗?

Could she have forgotten my address? 她会把我的 地址忘记了吗?

It couldn't have been Lao Chang. He has gone to the factory. 不可能是老张,他已经去工厂了,

Surely she *can* not *have taken* all the farm tools to the field by herself. 她一个人是不可能把这些农具都拿到地里去的.

[注] could 加动词不定式完成式时,有时表示"过去可能完成但事实上 并没有实理的动作",如:

You could have done the work better. 你本来可以做得更好些, (事实上你做得不如我想的那么好)

You could have got the early train. 你本来可以搭上早班火车的, (事实上没搭上)

三、may 和 might

11. 10 may 表示"允许"或"请求"如:

May I come in? — Yes, do. 我可以进来吗? ——请进.

You may ring us up any time during office hours. 在办公时间你可以随时给我们打电话.

May I borrow your raincoat? 我可以借用你的雨衣吗? You may go now. 你现在可以走了.

【注〕 may 表示"允许" 的否定形式是 must not ("不应该", "不许可"). 如:

May I take this book out of the reading-room?—No, you mustn't. 我可以把这本书拿出阅览室去吗?——不行.

11. 11 may 还可表示说话人的猜测。认为某一事情"或许"或"可能"发生 如:

We may call on you this evening. 我们也许今天 晚上来看你

She may not go to the concert tonight. 今晚她可能不去听音乐会了。

The news may or may not be true. 消息也许是真的, 也许不是真的.

- [注] may 用在感叹句中可表示祝愿,愿望 (参看 12. 15 的 2)),如:

 May you succeed. 祝你成功.

 May you have a pleasant journey. —路平安.
 - 11. 12 might might 为 may 的过去式。如:

The speaker said we *might* ask him any question. 作报告的人说我们可以向他提任何问题.

Comrade Wang said he *might* go to the Lu Hsun Museum on Sunday. 王同志说他星期天可能去参观鲁迅博物馆.

[注一] might 也可代替 may, 表示现在时间的动作,但语气较为婉转客气。或更加不肯定,如:

He might not come today. 今天他也许不来了.

Might I make a suggestion? 我可以提个建议吗?

[注二] might 用来表示现在时间时,还可表示"规劝".如:

You *might* pay more attention to spoken English. 你要更 多地注意英语口语。

You *might* shut the windows. The wind is blowing so hard outside. 关上窗户吧. 外面风很大.

11. 13 may (might) 后加动词不定式的完成式 表示对过去的推测,认为某一事情在过去"可能"发生. 这里 may 和 might 都指过去,不过 might 较为含蓄委婉或更加不肯定 如:

Hsiao Tien may (might) have gone to the library. 小田可能到图书馆去了.

Their production team may (might) have got in all the wheat by now. 他们生产队可能已经收完小麦了。 She may (might) have missed the plane. 她也许没赶上飞机.

He may (might) not have seen the film. 他可能沒有看过这部电影.

[注一] may 和 might 常用在 so that 和 in order that 所引导的目的状语从句中(现在英语中还经常用 can). 如:

Write it in simple language in order that everybody may understand it. 为了大家都看得懂,你要用简明的文字写.

He died so that others might live. 他为了别人而牺牲了.

【注二】 might 加动词不定式完成式,可说明某一事情在过去没有实现并含有"劝告"甚至"责备"的意思.如:

You might have told me earlier. 你本来可以早点告诉我的. You might have been more careful. 你本来可以多加小心.

四、must

11. 14 must 的词义 must 表示"必须"或"应当". 如: The working class must exercise leadership in everything. 工人阶级必须领导一切.

Education *must* serve proletarian politics and be combined with production labour. 教育必须为无产阶级政治服务,必须同生产劳动相结合.

You *must* get to the station before three o'clock. 你必须在三点钟以前到达车站.

You must come earlier tomorrow. 你明天得早点来.

11. 15 must 的否定式 must 的否定形式 must not 表示"不应该"或"不许可",语气比较强烈 如:

We mustn't waste our time. 我们不应该浪费我们的时间.

Passengers must not walk across the railway line. 旅

客不要橫穿铁路.

You *mustn't* miss that modern ballet, it is extremely good. 你不应当错过这个现代芭蕾舞剧,它好极了。

One must not divorce oneself from the masses. 不应 该股离群众.

- [注] 在意义上, must 的否定式 "不必" 须用 need not. 如: Must we hand in our exercises today?—No, you needn't. 我们必须今天交练习吗?——不, 不必交.
- 11. 16 must 也可表示过去 must 只有现在式,通常用以表示现在,但有时也可以表示过去 (多用 在 间接 引语中).如:

He told us we must all be ready by nine. 他告诉 我们在九点钟以前都得准备好

It is too late to go back, we must go on 太晚了, 回不去了,我们只有继续往前走。

[注] have to (必須) 则可以表示各种时间,如: I am afraid you will have to wait a while. 我看你得等一会儿。 At every step I had to pull my legs out of the snow. 我每走 一步都得将双腿从雪中拨出来。

11. 17 must 也可表示说话人对事物的推测 但比may 肯定得多,相当于汉语的"一定"或"准是".如:

He must be in the packing shop now. 他现在准是在包装车间.

Grandpa Li *must* be over seventy now. 李大爷准有 七十多岁了。

- She *must* know how to do farm work. 她一定懂得怎样于农活.
- You ate very little at breakfast today. You *must* be hungry now. 你今天早餐吃得很少, 现在一定饿了.
- [注] must 加动词不定式进行式,也可表示对现在发生的动作的推测,有 "一定"、"准是"的意思. 如:
 - She must be working on the experimental plot. 她现在一定在 试验田干活.
- 11. 18 must 加动词不定式的完成式 说明对过去事物的推测,表示"一定"或"准是"的意思. 如:
 - I mailed the letter two weeks ago. She *must have* received it. 我是两星期以前发的信,她一定已经收到了。
 - She *must have studied* English before. 她以前一定学过英语。
 - He must have been in the countryside for some time, he knows so much about farm work. 他在农村准是呆过一些时候,他很懂得农活.

五、have to

11. 19 have to 加动词原形 表示"不得不"、"必须"的概念. 它比 must 更含有"客观条件使得必须如此做"的意思, 纤有较多的时态. 如:

We revolutionaries have to use our heads. 我们要做革命的有心人.

At that time the villagers had to work for the landlord. 那时候村民们不得不给地主干活.

We will have to get up very early tomorrow. 我们 明天必须起得很早.

I shall have to go to the clinic today for my bad cough. 我咳嗽得厉害,今天必须去诊疗所看看.

[注] 口语中的 I have got to, you have got to 等 = I have to, you have to. 下面几种疑问形式均可用: Have I got to? Do I have to?

六、shall √

11. 20 shall 作为情态动词用于第二、三人称 可表示 说话人给对方的"命令"、"警告"、"允诺"、"威胁"等概念,如:

You *shall* have the book as soon as I finish it. 这本书我一看完就给你, (允诺)

He shall do it, whether he wants to or not. 不管 他愿意不愿意, 他必须做这项工作. (命令)

He who does not work, neither shall he eat. 不劳 动者不得食. (命令)

Socialist public property shall be inviolable. 社会主义的公共财产不可侵犯. (警告)

11. 21 在疑问句中,情态动词 shall 用于第一、三人称表示说话人征求对方的意见或向对方请示。如:

What shall I do now? 我现在该做什么?

Shall we go for a walk? 我们去散步好吗?

Shall we have to clean the machines this week? 我们这星期要擦这些机器吗?

Where *shall* I put the tape-recorder? 我应把录音 机放在哪儿?

When *shall* we trial-produce the new products? 我们什么时候试制新产品?

[注] 关于助动词 shall 的用法, 见 8.14 和 10.5.

七、should

11. 22 **情态动词 should 表示"劝告"、"建议"时** 这时 should 常译作"应当" 如:

We should read more works by Marx, Engels, Lenin and Stalin and works by Chairman Mao. 要多看点马恩列斯著作和毛主席著作.

You *should* listen to the doctor's advice. 你应当听大夫的话.

You should study the editorials in the People's Daily carefully. 你应当细心学习《人民日报》的社论.

11. 23 should 还可以表示"预测"、"可能"如:

They should be here by now. 他们现在可能到了. The reference book should be in the reading-room. 这本参考书可能在阅览室里.

11.24 should 有时表示说话人的感情如惊奇、愤怒、失 望等 如:

Why should I go? 我干吗要去? (不满)

I am sorry that he should be so obstinate. 我很遗憾, 他竟这样固执. (失望)

It's strange that it *should* be so hot today. 很怪, 今天怎么这么热. (惊奇)

11. 25 should 后跟动词不定式的完成式时 这时句子 指的是过去的事情,如果是肯定句,说明某件事本应完成而 未完成;如果是否定句,表示发生了不应当发生的事情,如:

You should not have gone back to work without the doctor's permission. 你不应当未经医生许可就回去工作.

You should have stopped at the red light. 你见了红灯本应该停车.

The Soviet troops should have withdrawn from Czechoslovakia long ago. 苏联军队早就应该从捷克撤出去。

[注] 关于助动词 should, 见 8.17 和 10.7.

八、will

- **11.** 26 **情态动词 will** 可用于各人称,表示"意志"、"意愿"和"决心"等. 如:
 - I will do my best to help Comrade Chao. 我一定 尽力帮助赵同志.
 - We will never seek hegemonism and we will never be a superpower. 我们永远不称霸,永远不做超级大国.
 - I'll go and get my raincoat tor you. 我去给你取雨衣.

They won't go to the theatre tonight. 他们今晚不去看戏.

11. 27 will **在疑问句中用于第二人称时** 这时句子表示说话人向对方提出请求或询问. 如:

Will you give me a piece of paper? 你给我一张纸好吗?

Will you please explain the sentence once more? 请你再把这个句子解释一遍好吗?

Will you have western food or Chinese food, Mr. Smith? 史密斯先生, 你吃两餐还是中餐?

Will you help me to study the State and Revolution? 请你帮我学《国家与革命》好吗?

[注一] will 在下面句子中 = I suppose (我猜想) 或 probably (大概): This will be the room you are looking for. 这大概就是你要找的那个房间.

You will remember the story I told you the other day. 你们大概还记得我那天给你们讲的那个故事.

[注二] will 有时表示一种习惯动作或状态, 如: Water will boil at 100 degrees Centigrade. 水总是在摄氏 100 度煮沸.

Boys will be boys. 男孩子总是男孩子。

[注三] 关于助动词 will, 见 8.14 和 10.6.

九、would

11. 28 would would 是 will 的过去式,可用于各人称,表示过去时间的"意志"、"愿望"和"决心"等. 如:

He declared that he would do everything to help us. 他说要尽一切可能来帮助我们.

- I told Hsiao Chang that I would go along with him. 我告诉小张我要跟他一块去.
- All the doctors and nurses told Dr. Bethune not to give his own blood to the wounded, but he wouldn't listen. 医生和护士劝自求恩大夫不要把自己的血输给伤员,但是他不听.
- 11. 29 would 用来表示现在时间时 这时 would 不论 是表达说话人本身的意志或向对方提出请求,均较 will 婉 转. 如:

Would you tell us some of your experiences in the countryside? 请跟我们谈谈你在乡下的体验好吗? Would you like to have a glass of wine? 你要喝杯酒吗?

- Would you please tell me the way to the Red Flag People's Commune? 请告诉我红旗公社怎么走?
 Would you mind helping me with my packing? 诸
- Would you mind helping me with my packing? 请你帮我打打行李好吗?
- [注] 在日常会话中, I would like to 和 I should like to 都可以说, I would like 的简略式为 I'd like. 如:
 - I should (would) like to have a look at the new television set. 我想看看这架新电视机.
 - I'd like to borrow a copy of The Communist Manifesto. 我要借一本《共产党盲言》.
 - "I would like to see the Monument to the People's Heroes," said a foreign visitor. 一位外宾说: "我想参观人民英雄纪念碑。"

11. 30 would 还可以表示过去习惯发生的动作 如:

The old retired worker would often go to the park to play chess. 这位退休老工人常常到公园去下棋。 [注] 关于助动词 would, 见 8.17 和 10.8.

十、ought

11. 31 ought 动词 ought 只有一种形式,后面须跟带 to 的动词不定式. ought 表示"有义务或必要"做某件事,还可表示"劝告". 如:

You ought to follow Old Wang's advice. 你应当听老王的话.

You oughtn't to smoke so much. 你不应当抽烟太多. You ought to go to the clinic at once. You don't look well. 你脸色不好,应该马上到医务室去.

[注] ought 表示"应该", 语气比 should 强.

11.32 ought 后加动词不定式的完成式时 指过去的动作. 如用肯定形式 (ought to have done), 表示某一件事该做而未做, 相当于 should have done. 如用否定形式 (ought not to have done), 则表示一件不该做的事情发生了, 相当于 should not have done. 如:

He ought to have done the exercise more carefully. 这个练习他应当作得更细心一些.

I ought to have returned these books to the library last week. 我上星期就应当把这些书还给图书馆.

You oughin't to have been so rude. 你不该这样粗鲁.

You ought not to have taken his skates without asking him. 你不该沒有得到他的许可就把他的冰鞋拿走.

+- dare

11. 33 dare dare (敢) 的用法和其他动词有所不同。 dare 用于否定句或疑问句中时,其用法和其他情态动词一样,即 dare 本身无变化,后面所跟的动词不定式不带 to. 如:

The imperialists dare not tell the truth. 帝国主义者不敢说真话

Dare he admit his mistake? 他敢于承认错误吗? 但是 dare 用在肯定结构中时,后面的动词不定式可加to. 如:

Young people should dare to think, dare to speak and dare to act. 青年人要敢想、敢说、敢干.

The peasant boy *dared* to defy the landlord. 这个 农民的孩子敢于反抗地主.

[注] 在否定句或疑问句中, dare 也可用作实义动词, 用助动词 do 来帮助, 后面的动词不定式可带 to. 如:

Do they dare to do it? 他们敢做这事吗?

The enemy did not dare to come out after dark. 敌人夜间不敢出来.

十二、need

11.34 need need (需要)的用法与 dare 几乎完全相同.即在否定句或疑问句中,和其他情态动词一样,本身无变化,后面用不带 to 的动词不定式;在肯定句中时,和实义动词一样,后面的动词不定式要带 to,第三人称单数现在一般时加 -s (或 -es),并有时态的变化.如:

- Need we return the magazines today? 我们今天需要把杂志还回去吗?
- Every commune member *needs* to pay only a little money a year to get medical care. 每个社员每年只需缴一点钱就可以得到治疗.
- You need not write down your translation. You may do it orally. 你们不必写下这个翻译练习, 口头做就行了。
- [注] 与 dare 一样,在否定句或疑问句里, need 也可和实义动词相同, 用助动词 to do 来帮助,后面的动词不定式必须带 to. 如:

Do they need to take any farm tools with them? -No, they don't need to. 他们需要带农具吗?——不需要.

He did not need to go there so early. 他不必去得那么早.

11.35 need 后面有名词作宾语时 完全用作实义动词,表示"需要"或"缺乏"某件事物 这时,它的变化,和一般实义动词完全相同。如:

I need a dictionary. 我需要字典.

You need a hair-cut. 你该理发了,

- Do you *need* a fountain-pen? 你需要一支自来水笔吗?
- We always *need* the workers' help in running our school workshops. 我们校办车间经常需要工人的帮助.
- Our revolutionary cause *needs* thousands of cadres armed with Marxism and foreign languages. 我们的革命事业需要成千上万用马克思主义武装和通晓外国语的干部.
- 11. 36 needn't 后加动词不定式的完成式时 指过去已

做了但勿须做的动作,如:

You needn't have watered the vegetables, as it is going to rain. 你满可以不必浇菜, 天要下雨了.

You necdn't have brought your umbrella. We are going by taxi. 你满可以不必带伞,我们要坐出租汽车去.

- [注] 注意 didn't have to 和 didn't need to 则表示过去未做也勿须 做的动作,如:
 - I didn't have to interpret it for her, for she knows Chinese. 我勿须为她翻译,她懂汉语.
 - We knew how to run the machine, so we didn't need to ask the workers' help. 我们知道开机器,勿须工人帮忙.

第十二章 语气和虚拟语气

一、概说

12.1 语气及其种类

- 1) 语气 (mood) 语气是一种动词形式, 表示讲话人对某一行为或事情的看法和态度.
 - 2) 语气的种类 语气可分为下列三种:
- a) 直陈语气 (indicative mood) 表示讲话人认为他所说的话是一个事实.

There are two sides to every question. 每个问题都有两个方面.

Chinchow is famous for its apples. 锦州以产苹果闻名.

Comrade Chang Szu-teh had a deep love for Chairman Mao and the Party. 张思德同志对毛主席和党怀有深厚的爱。

b) 新使语气 (imperative mood) 表示讲话人对对方的 请求或命令

Never forget class struggle. 千万不要忘记阶级斗争. Bring along your exercise books tomorrow. 明天把练习本带来.

Make yourself at home. 请随便, 不要客气.

Don't move! 不许动! (对敌喊话用语)

Don't be late. 不要迟到.

Be quiet! 请安静!

c) 虚拟语气 (subjunctive mood) 见以后各节.

二、虚拟语气

- 12. 2 虚拟语气 是一种特殊的动词形式,用来表示说话人所说的话不是一个事实,而只是一种愿望、假设、怀疑、建议、猜测、可能或纯粹的空想等. 如:
 - If I were not so busy, I would go with you. 假如我不太忙,我会和你一起去. (表示假设)
 - I wish Lao Li were here. He would know how to fix the machine. 老李在这儿就好了,他会把机器修好. (表示愿望)

He suggests that we *should* all go to see the film. 他建议我们都去看电影 (表示建议)

- 12. 3 虚拟语气的动词形式 比较特殊, 共有下列七种:
- 1) 动词原形 (用于一切人称和数)
- 2) 动词的过去式 (用于一切人称和数, be 的过去式一律用 were)
 - 3) had+过去分词 (用于一切人称和数)
 - 4) should+动词原形 (用于一切人称和数)
 - 5) should have+过去分词 (用于一切人称和数)
 - 6) should (第一人称), would (第二、三人称)+动词原形
- 7) should (第一人称), would (第二、三人称)+have+过去分词
 - 〔注: 上述某些动词形式和直陈语气的某些动词形式相同,但它们的用法 及其所表示的时间概念则完全两样,二者切不可混淆。

12. 4 虚拟语气常用在表示条件的从句和表示结果的 生句中 现将条件从句和结果主句各自的动词形式列表如下:

	条 件 从 旬	结 果 主 句
与现在事实相反	if I (we, you, he, they) + 动词过去 式 (be 的过去式用 were)	I (we) should He would You would They would
与过去事实相反	If I (we, you, he, they) + had + 过 去分词	I (we) should He would You would They would + have+过去分词
与将来事 实可能相 反	If I (we, you, he, they) +动词过去式 (be 的过去式用 were)	I (we) should He would You would They would

〔注〕 在美国英语中,结果主句第一人称用的 should 常被 would 所代 替

12.5 虚拟语气在条件从句和结果主句中的用法

- 1) 表示与现在事实相反的条件和结果. 如:
 - If I were you, I should go and see the dentist at once. 假如我是你的话, 我会马上去看牙科医生, (事实上我不是你)
 - If there were no gravity, we should not be able to walk. 假若沒有引力,我们就不能行走.
 - If they had time, they would study Italian too. 假如他们有时间的话,他们也会学意大利语的.(可是事实上他们沒有时间)
 - If she knew German, she would read Marx and

Engels in German. 假如她懂德语,她会读马克思和恩格斯的德文原著的.

He would tell me if he knew, but he does not know anything about it. 假如他知道的话,他会告诉我的,但是他一点也不知道.

2) 表示与过去事实相反的条件和结果. 如:

- I should have died of hunger if the Communist Party had not come in 1949. 要是一九四九年共产党不来的话,我是会饿死的.
- If you had come a few minutes earlier, you would have met him. 要是你早来几分钟的话,你就见到他了.
- If she hadn't been so strict with herself, she wouldn't have made such great progress. 她要是对自己要求不严格, 她就不会有这样大的进步.
- If he hadn't lived among the workers for so many years, he wouldn't have been able to write such a good novel. 假如他不是和工人一起生活这么多年, 他不可能写出这样好的小说.
- 3) 表示与将来事实可能相反的条件和结果. 其用法和表示与现在事实相反的条件和结果相同(见 12.4 图表). 如:
 - If it were Sunday tomorrow, I would go to see my friends there. 明天要是星期天,我会去看望在那里的我的朋友.
 - If you dropped the glass, it would break. 杯子掉下来会打碎的.
 - What would happen if I put the paper on the fire?

- —It would burn. 我若把纸放在火上会怎么样?——纸会烧着.
- [注] 在表示与将来事实可能相反的条件从句中,亦可用 were to + 动词原形 但比较正式,常用于书面体中,还可以用 should + 动词原形 如:
 If you were to come tomorrow, I might have time to see you. 你如果明天来的话,我或许会有时间见你.
 - If it should rain tomorrow, what would we do? 明天万一下雨, 我们怎么办?
 - If I were to see her tomorrow, I would tell her about the Party branch's decision. 我明天如见到她,就把党支部的决定告诉她.
- 12.6 省掉 if 的条件从句结构 在笔语中条件从句有时可以不用连词 if, 而把 were, had 或 should 移至主语之前. 但如从句沒有 were, had 或 should, 则不能这样做.

Should he come, tell him to ring me up. 他要是来了,让他给我打个电话.

- Were I in your position, I would go. 如果我处于你的地位,我就去。
- Had the workers not helped us, our experiment would have failed. 如果沒有工人的帮助,我们的试验是会失败的.
- 【注】 有时虚拟条件不用条件从句而用介词短语、动词不定式等来表示. 如:

Without contradiction nothing would exist. 没有矛盾就没有世界. We could not have done the work well without your help. 要是没有你的帮助,我们不可能做好这工作.

- It would be a good idea to go swimming at the Summer Palace. 到颐和园去游泳,倒是个好主意.
- All this would have been impossible in the old society. 这一切 在旧社会是不可能有的.

- 12. 7 虚拟语气和情态动词 虚拟结构 (不论从句或主句) 常可用情态动词的过去式。即 could, might, would 等加不带 to 的动词不定式或不带 to 的动词不定式完成式,来作谓语动词。这些情态动词除表示虚拟结构外,本身还有独立的意思: could 能够, might 或许, would 愿意,决心.
 - If I were you, I would go. 我如果是你,我就愿意去. If he were here, he might agree with you. 假如他在这里,他可能会同意你.
 - 1 would help you if I could. 假如我能够的话, 我一定帮助你.
 - If it had not been for the Party's instructions, we could not have succeeded. 如果不是党的指示,我们是不可能成功的.
- 12.8 有时条件从句中的动作和结果主句中的动作,发生的时间不一致 这时,动词的形式应根据它所表示的时间加以调整.如:
 - If he had followed the doctor's advice, he would be quite all right now. 他当时若是听医生的话,现在就会痊愈了. (从句说明过去,主句说明现在)
 - If I were you, I would have gone to the theatre. 假如我是你,我会去看话剧了. (从句说明现在,主句说明过去)
 - If you hadn't helped me, I couldn't have finished it on time and most likely I would be still working now. 假若你沒有帮助我,我不可能按时完成工作,很可能现在还在干. (从句说明过去,主句说明过去和现在)

- 12.9 用直陈语气表示条件和结果 在现代英语里,多用直陈语气表示条件和结果. 直陈语气的条件和结果所表示的往往是事实. 如不是事实, 其可能性也较虚拟语气要大.
 - If it rains tomorrow, we shall not go out. 假如明天下雨的话,我们就不出去.
 - We must follow the mass line if we want to do our work well. 如果我们要把工作做好,就必须走群众路线.
 - If the train leaves at eight thirty, there is no time to lose. 火车如果是八点半开,我们得抓紧时间了,
 - If the rain stops, I'll go for a swim. 要是雨停了, 我就去游泳。
- **12.** 10 **省去从句或主句的虚拟结构** 虚拟结构中的从 **句或主句**有时形式上可以省略,但意义上却仍存在.
 - 1) 省去了条件从句的虚拟结构
 - That would be fine. 那就太好了。(省去了 if you should do it 或类似条件)
 - You might stay here forever. 你可以永远呆在这里. (省去了 if you wanted to 或类似条件)
 - I would not have done it. 我是不会作那件事的. (省去了 if I were you 或类似条件)
 - 【注】 虚拟结构中省去的从句有时并不容易找出. 如: Who would have thought of it? 谁会想到是这样的呢?
 - 2) 省去了结果主句的虚拟结构(常用以表示愿望) If only I could help you! 假如我能帮助你,那该是 多好啊!

- If only he were here! 假如他在这里该多好啊!
- If only he had not left! 如果他沒有走, 那就好了!
- If only I were ten years younger! 我要是能年轻十 岁该多好啊!
- If only the wind would stop! 风要是停了该多好!

三、虚拟语气的其他用法

- 12. 11 虚拟语气用在主语从句中 在 It is natural (necessary, strange, important) that ... 这类句型里, that 所引导的主语从句中的谓语动词常用 should 加动词原形。如:
 - It is important that we should take part in the three great revolutionary movements. 重要的是,我们要参加三大革命运动。
 - It is imperative that we *should criticize* revisionism. 应当批判修正主义.
 - It is quite natural that he *should think* so. 他这样 想是很自然的事.
 - It is strange that he should have gone away without telling us. 真奇怪, 他沒有通知我们就走掉了.
 - It is necessary that the question should be settled at once. 必须马上解决这个问题.
- **12.** 12 **虚拟语气用在宾语从句中** 下列两种宾语从句 须用虚拟语气:
- 1) 在动词 wish 后的宾语从句 (常常省去连词 that), 表示不可实现的愿望. 从句中的动词如用过去式, 则表示说话人现在存在的一桩遗憾事 (下面第一、二例句); 如用过去完成

- 式,则表示已经发生的一件遗憾事(下面第三、四例句):
 - I wish I were a PLA soldier. 但愿我是个解放军战士. (= I'm sorry I am not.)
 - I wish I knew how to operate the machine. 我要是会操作这架机器该有多好啊! (= I'm sorry I don't know.)
 - I wish he hadn't gone. 他要是沒走该多好! (l'm sorry he went.)
 - We wish you had come to our New Year's party. 我们真希望你来参加我们的新年联欢会. (but you did not)

动词 wish 如果是过去式,后面宾语从句的动词的虚拟 语气形式不变,仍用过去式或过去完成式. 如:

> She wished she *knew* how to drive a tractor. 她但 愿会开拖拉机. (=She was sorry she didn't know.)

- I wished I hadn't been so forgetful. Then I shouldn't have missed the talk. 我要不是这样忘事该多好, 那我就不会沒有去听报告.
- [注] 有时在宾语从句中可用 would 或 might 加动词原形,表示有可能实现的愿望,如:

I wish he *might* stay with me. 我希望他和我住在一起。 He wishes I would go with him. 他希望我和他一起去。 I wish you would be quiet. 我希望你安静一些。

- 2) 动词 demand (要求), suggest (建议), order (命令), insist (坚持), propose (建议)等后面的宾语从句,用 should (用于所有的人称) 加动词原形来表示虚拟语气.如:
 - I suggest that we *should hold* a meeting tonight. 我 建议今晚开个会.

- The chairman proposed that we should discuss the question. 主席提议我们讨论这个问题。
- Most students insist that they should have more English classes. 多数同学坚持要多上英语课.
- [注] 这种结构中的 should 往往省去, 只用动词原形 (用于所有的人称)。 如上面三例只用 hold, discuss 和 have, 不用 should hold, should discuss 和 should have. 又如:
 - I suggest that we *make* a new experiment. 我建议进行新的试验.
 - I propose that the matter be put to the vote at once. 我提议 把这个问题马上付表决.
- 12. 13 虚拟语气用在状语从句中 由 as if 或 as though 所引导的状语从句表示比较或方式时,从句中的谓语动词用虚拟语气. 动词形式用动词的过去式 (be 用 were) 或 had +过去分词. 如:

My mother looked after the orphan as if he were her own child. 我母亲照料这个孤儿象自己孩子一样。

You speak as if you had really been there. 你谈得好象你真的到过那里似的.

It looks as if it might rain. 天好象要下雨似的.

12.14 在 It is time (that) …句型中 从句里的谓语 动词常用虚拟语气表示将来,动词形式用动词的过去式. 意思是"该干某件事了,时间已经有些晚了". 如:

It is time we left. 我们该走了.

It is time we went to bed. 我们该睡觉了,

- It is time we *summed up* our results. 我们该总结我们的成绩了。
- 12. 15 虚拟语气用在简单句中 下面是虚拟语气用在

简单句中较常见的两种情况.

1) 动词原形 live 用在 Long live ... 中. 如:
Long live the Communist Party of China! 中国共产党万岁!

Long live the people! 人民万岁! (live 也是虚拟语气的一种动词形式,不可改为 lives)

2) May 用在句子开头,表示"祝愿"(多用在正式的文体中). 如:

May good luck be yours. 祝你順利.

May you be happy. 祝你快乐.

May you do even better! 祝你取得更大成就!

第十三章 非限定动词

概说

13. 1 种类、意义及其特征

- 1) 非限定动词 (verbal) 包括动词不定式、动名词和 分词三种.
 - 2) 非限定动词和限定动词的基本区别
- a) 限定动词在句子中可以单独作谓语动词, 非限定动词 在旬中则不能单独作谓语动词.
- b) 限定动词的形式要与主语的人称和数一致, 而非限定 动词的形式则不受主语的人称和数的限制. 如:

限定动词 like 受主语人称和数的 He likes to sing. 限制,它的形式与主语一致. 第 他喜欢唱歌. 一句为 likes,第二句为 like. 非 They like to sing. 限定动词 to sing 则不受这种限 他们喜欢唱歌. 一制, 它的形式不随主语而改变.

was carrying a red flag. 非 在前面的人打着一面红旗. The men walking in front were carrying red flags. 走 在前面的人们打着红旗.

The man walking in front) 限定动词 be 受主语的 人称和数的限制,它的 形式须与主语一致. 一旬为 was,第二旬为 were. 非限定动词 walking 则不受主语的限制, 它的形式不随主语而改 变.

- 3) 非限定动词的双重性
- a) 非限定动词有动词的特征

- (a) 如果非限定动词是及物动词,须有宾语,
- (b) 非限定动词可以由状语来修饰。
- (c) 非限定动词仍有语态和时态的变化.
- b) 非限定动词还有一些非动词的特征 它相当于名词、形容词等,在句子里可以作这些词类所能用作的句子成分。
 - c) 非限定动词双重性举例
 - He promised to do it tonight. 他答应今天晚上做. (非限定动词 to do 的动词性质表现在它有宾语 it 和 状语 tonight; 它的非动词性质表现在它用作 promised 的宾语.)
 - I am sorry to have disturbed you. 我打扰你了,对不 起 (to have disturbed 是动词不定式 to disturb 的 完成式,说明非限定动词有时态上的变化,这也是 非限定动词的动词性质)
 - I saw many people spreading manure in the fields. 我看见许多人在地里施肥. (非限定动词 spreading 是现在分词, 它有宾语 manure 和状语 in the fields.)
 - There is no time to be lost. 必须抓紧时间. (to be lost 是动词不定式 to lose 的被动式,说明非限定动词有语态上的变化,这也是非限定动词的动词性质.)
- 4) 非限定动词短语 带有宾语或状语的非限定动词词组, 称为非限定动词短语. (详见 13.2, 13.14, 13.26) 如:
 - I have no time to finish that long novel this week. 我本周沒有时间读完那本长篇小说. (不定式短语)

Forgetting the past means betrayal. 忘记过去就意味着背叛. (动名词短语)

He tried to improve his English by reading wide-ly. 他试图通过广泛阅读来提高英语水平.(动名词短语)

Members wishing to see the play are requested to notify Comrade Li before Saturday. 愿意看戏的会员请在星期六以前通知李同志. (分词短语)

二、动词不定式

13.2 意义、形式和特征

- 1) 基本概念和形式 动词不定式 (infinitive) 是一种非限定动词,由不定式记号 to 加动词原形所构成.动词不定式具有名词、形容词和副词的特征,同时也保留动词的特征.
 - 2) 动词不定式的动词特征
 - a) 如果动词不定式是及物的,须有宾语. 如: He wants to study Japanese. 他想学习日语. (动词不 定式 to study 后面有宾语 Japanese)
 - b) 动词不定式可以被状语来修饰. 如:

The rain continued to fall heavily. 雨继续下得很大, (动词不定式 to fall 后面有状语 heavily)

动词不定式加宾语或状语构成动词不定式短语,如上二例中的 to study Japanese 和 to fall heavily.

c) 动词不定式有下列时态和语态的变化:

	主 动 语 态	被 动 语 态
一般式	to write	to be written
进行式	to be writing	_
完成式	to have written	to have been written

13. 3 用法 由于动词不定式具有名词、形容词和副词的特征,所以它在句子中可作主语、表语、宾语、定语和状语,两个或两个以上的动词不定式幷列在一起时,第一个不定式带 to,后面的不定式往往把 to 省掉 (例见下面 2) 的第一个例句).

1) 主语

To talk with him is a great pleasure. 和他谈话是一件非常愉快的事.

To die for the people is a glorious death! 为人民而死,虽死犹荣.

动词不定式短语作主语时,往往放在谓语动词的后面,而用引词 it 作语法上的主语.上述两句可以改为:

It is a great pleasure to talk with him.

It is a glorious death to die for the people.

下面是一些类似的例句: (注意 "It is +形容词+动词不定式短语"是英语常用的一个句型.)

It is necessary to make a plan for the study of Volume V of The Selected Works of Mao Tsetung. 必须订一个学习毛选五卷的计划.

It is not difficult to learn a foreign language if you

spend time and effort on it. 只要你花时间下功夫,学好一门外国语并不难.

2) 表语

Her wish is to become a tractor driver and serve the people. 她的愿望是成为一个拖拉机驾驶员,为人民服务. (注意 serve 之前省去了 to)

Our plan is to finish the work in two weeks. 我们 计划在两周内完成这项工作.

Lei Feng's only desire was to be useful to the people and the country. 雷锋唯一的愿望是对人民和国家做些有用的事情.

3) 宾语 有些及物动词常用动词不定式作宾语. 这些动词有: want (想要), wish (想望), like (喜欢), decide (决定), help (帮助), pledge (保证), begin (开始), forget (忘记), learn (学习), ask (要求) 等等。 动词不定式一般不作介词的宾语.

He wished to be a village school teacher in a mountain area. 他想做个山村教师.

Do you like to watch football matches? 你喜欢看足球赛吗?

Learn to walk before you run. 先学走后学跑.

We decided to make changes in our plan. 我们决定把计划做些修改.

动词不定式也可以用来作某些形容词的宾语。这些形容词通常只有 ready (准备好,愿意), eager (急于), anxious (急于) 等,但为了学习上的方便,也可以包括 able (能够), sure (一定), glad (高兴), sorry (难过), afraid (怕), free (随

意), pleased (高兴), determined (决心), willing (愿意) 等. 如:

Communism is sure to triumph over capitalism. 共产主义一定会战胜资本主义。

How do you do? I'm glad to meet you. 你好? 见到你很高兴.

The boys and girls are anxious to learn how to skate. 这些男孩子和女孩子渴望学会滑冰。

4) 定语 动词不定式作定语时,须放在被修饰的名词或 代词之后.

He is always the first one to get up. 他总是第一个起床.

I have a few words to say on this question. 关于 这个问题我有几句话要说.

Workers are discussing ways to guarantee high output. 工人们正在讨论保证高产量的办法。

After the Ching Ming Festival it is time to sow sorghum, millet and corn. 清明节一过,正是播种高粱、谷子和玉米的时节.

-) 5) 状语 动词不定式作状语时,一般放在它所修饰的 动词之后.
 - a) 表示目的

Early in 1938 he went to Yenan to study. 一九三 八年初,他到延安去学习.

The villagers dug tunnels to prepare for tunnel warfare against the enemy. 乡亲们挖地道,准备 跟敌人打地道战.

[注一] 强调动词不定式所表示的目的时,动词不定式可变为 in order to (为了) 或 so as to (以便) 加动词原形, 如:

We often listen to English broadcasts on Radio Peking in order to get more practice in training our ears. 我们经常听北京电台的英语广播,以便加强听力训练.

In order to learn acupuncture, she practised on herself every day. 为了学习针灸, 她每天在自己身上试验. (注意 in order to 可放在句首)

The People's Liberation Army often do mass work so as to be always at one with the masses. 人民解放军经常做群众工作以便和群众打成一片.

[注二] 动词不定式可以放在句首,使其所表示的目的更加明显突出. 如: To be a teacher of the people, one must first be their pupil. 要做人民的先生,先做人民的学生.

To defend our country we must strengthen ourselves. 为了保卫祖国,我们必须加强自己的力量.

有些作为句子独立成分的习惯语如 to begin with (首先), to conclude (最后), to be sure (当然), to tell you the truth (老 实对你说)等也都属于这一类.

b) 表示结果

My grandmother lived to see the liberation of China. 我祖母活到亲眼看见中国解放.

- A few years later he came home to find that his home town had greatly changed. 几年后他回到家里,发现故乡的面貌大大地改变了。
- [注一] 有时可以用 too...to (太...而不能)结构来表示"结果办不到":

 He is too young to join the Army. 他太年轻了, 不能参军.

 Lu Hsun was too excited to sleep when he learned that the Red Army had got to northern Shensi. 鲁迅听说红军到达陕北后激动得睡不着觉。
- [注二] 动词不定式和 only 连用时, 常表示未预料到的结果.
 - I went to see him only to find him out. 我去看他, 不料他出去了。
 - I hurried to the post office, only to find it was closed. 我匆忙赶到邮局,不料已经关门了。

13. 4 含有动词不定式的复合宾语 动词不定式可作复合宾语中的宾语补足语. 可有这种复合宾语结构的动词有: ask (请求), order (命令), persuade (说服), advise (劝告), like (喜欢), want (想要), tell (叫), know (知道), help (帮助), call on (号召,请求),等等.

Chairman Moo called on the whole country to learn from Comrade Lei Feng. 毛主席号召全国向雷锋 同志学习。

The children asked *the old Red Armyman to tell* them stories about the Red Army. 孩子们要求老红军战士给他们讲红军的故事。

The doctor advised *him to take* a good rest. 大夫 劝他好好休息.

在某些及物动词的复合宾语中,动词不定式须省掉 to. 这些动词有: make (使), let (让), see (见), watch (望), hear (听), have (使), feel (觉得) 等。动词 help 后不定式的 to 可以省掉,也可以保留。

Make the past serve the present and foreign things serve China. 古为今用, 洋为中用.

The landlord *made Uncle Li suffer* a great deal. 地主使李大爷受了许多苦.

- I heard him speak in the next room. 我听到他在隔壁房间里讲话.
- One night Kao Yu-pao saw the landlord steal into the courtyard. —天夜晚,高玉宝看见地主偷偷溜进院子

The workers helped us (to) set up our school factory.

工人帮助我们建校办工厂。

- [注] 上述句子变成被劝语态时, 劝词不定式的 to 仍须保留. 如: He was seen to enter the room. 有人看见他走进房间去了,
- **13.** 5 动词不定式的否定结构 动词不定式的否定结构 由在不定式符号 to 之前加上 not 而成.

He decided not to go home. 他决定不回家.

The teacher warned the pupils not to go skating on thin ice. 教师警告学生不要在薄冰上滑冰。

I told him not to open the door. 我叫他不要开门。

13. 6 疑问词+动词不定式 疑问代词 who, what, which 和疑问副词 when, where, how, why 等后加动词不定式,构成动词不定式短语,可在句子中作主语、宾语、表语等成分,如:

When to start has not been decided. 何时动身尚未决定. (作主语)

They told her where to find the Red Army. 他们告诉她到那里去找红军. (作宾语)

The peasants taught us how to plant rice. 农民教我们种稻子, (作宾语)

He thought a lot about how to improve the crop. 他对如何提高收成考虑得很多. (作宾语)

13. 7 动词不定式复合结构: "for+名词(或代词宾格) +动词不定式" 在这种结构中的 for 本身无意义。名词 (或代词宾格) 形式上是 for 的宾语, 但在意义上可以说是动 词不定式的主语。这种不定式复合结构在句子里可作下列成分;

1) 主语

For us to study Marxism-Leninism is very important. 学习马克思列宁主义对我们说来是非常重要的。

在句中, for us 在意义上是 to study Marxism-Leninism 的主语。这种结构作主语时,和简单的动词不定式结构一样,一般都用引词 it 来代表幷放在句首,"for +名词+不定式"则放在句末。如:

It is important for us to study Marxism-Leninism.

It is necessary for us to learn from each other. 我们必须相互学习.

2) 表语

It is for you to decide. 这得由你决定.

3) 宾语

Can you arrange for a car to take us there? 你能安排一辆汽车送我们到那里去吗?

4) 定语

There is a lot of work for us to do. 有很多工作要. 我们去做。

5) 状语

They handed in their exercises just in time for the teacher to correct them. 他们按时交练习,以便老师批改.

The policeman blew his whistle for the carts to stop. 警察吹哨让那几辆大车停下来. (作目的状语)

13. 8 动词不定式一般式所表示的时间关系

1) 动词不定式一般式表示的动作与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生。如:

- I saw him go out. 我看见他出去了。(saw 与 go out 两个动作同时发生)
- Would you help me *put* things in order before we leave? 在我们离开之前, 你帮我整理一下东西好吗? (would help 和 put 同时发生)
- 2) 但在很多情况下,动词不定式一般式表示的动作发生 在谓语动词表示的动作之后.如:
 - I hope to see you again. 我希望再见到你. (to see 这个动作发生在 hope 之后)
 - The boy said he wanted to be a steel worker. 这男孩说他想做一个炼钢工人. (to be 在 wanted 之后)
- **13.9** 动词不定式的时态形式 动词不定式通常 有三种时态形式,现以 write 为例:
 - 一般式 to write 进行式 to be writing 完成式 to have written
- **13.** 10 动词不定式完成式的用法 动词不定式完成式 表示的动作发生在限定动词表示的动作之前,如:

I am sorry to have kept you waiting. 对不起,叫你等了. (to have kept 发生在 am 所表示的时间之前) She seems to have read the book before. 她好象看过这本书. (to have read 发生在 seems 所表示的时间之前)

The battery appears to have run down. 这组电池的电好象已经用完了。(to have run down 发生在appears 所表示的时间之前)

但在下面句子中,动词不定式表示"动作沒有完成":

We were to have met at ten. 我们本来是约定十点

钟见面的. (结果未见面)

13. 11 动词不定式进行式的用法 动词不定式进行式 表示动作正在进行,与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生,如:

He seems to be recovering. 他看来在复元.

When he came in, I happened to be lying on the bed, reading. 他进来的时候, 我碰巧正躺在床上看 书.

- **13.** 12 动词不定式的被动语态 动词不定式有两种被动语态形式:
 - 一般式 to be written

完成式 to have been written

如: The next thing to be done is to carry away the earth. 下一步要做的事是把土运走.

Today's visit to the Ming Tombs has to be put off because of rain. 原订今日参观十三陵,因雨延期.

Millions of young people have gone to the country-side to be re-educated by the poor and lower-middle peasants. 成百万青年到农村接受贫下中农再教育.

What is to be done next? 下一步干什么? (be 加动词不定式结构的被动语态)

13. 13 分裂不定式 有时在不定式记号"to"和动词原形之间插入一个副词,这种现象叫做分裂不定式 (split infinitive). 插入动词不定式的副词, 习惯上往往与不定式动词联在一起. 如:

He has begun to really understand the importance of remoulding his world outlook. 他开始真正认识

到改造世界观的意义了.

- Our object is to further cement friendly relations between the two countries. 我们的目的是进一步加强两国之间的友好关系。
- At first he wasn't interested in bookkeeping, but later he began to actually like it. 起初他对会计工作沒有兴趣, 但到后来倒喜欢它起来了。

三、动名词

13.14 意义、形式和特征

- · 1) 动名词 (gerund) 是非限定动词的一种, 由动词原形加词尾 -ing 构成, 与现在分词同形, 动名词有名词和动词的特征.
 - 2) 动名词的动词特征:
 - a) 动名词可以有宾语
 - I have finished repairing that machine. 我修完那台 机器了
 - b) 动名词可以用状语来修饰

They have started working in the apple-orchard. 他们已经开始在苹果园里劳动了.

动名词加宾语或状语构成动名词短语,如上两例中的 repairing that machine 和 working in the apple-orchard.

3) 动名词的名词特征: 在句中可作主语、宾语等. 如: Getting up early is a good habit. 起早是个好习惯. (动名词 getting up 作主语)

The foreign visitors enjoyed seeing Chinese acrobatics. 外宾喜欢看中国杂技. (动名词 seeing 作宾语)

4) 动名词有下列时态和语态的变化

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

13. 15 用法

1) 作主语

Seeing is believing. 百闻不如一见.

Reading aloud is very important in learning English. 学习英语朗读很重要.

Looking down on women was part of the reactionary thinking of Confucius and Mencius. 轻视妇女是孔孟的反动思想.

[注] 在下面特殊结构中,亦可用引词 it 作形式主语,把意义上的主语即 动名词放在句末.如:

It's no use crying over spilt milk. 牛奶打翻了哭也没有用 (作无益的后悔没有用)。

2) 作表语

Her job was *looking after* the pigs. 她的工作是喂猪. His hobby is *collecting* stamps. 他爱好集邮.

【注】 动名词作表语时,不可与进行时态相混淆. 试比较:

She was washing clothes. (过去进行时) 地正在港太服.

Her job was washing clothes. (动名词) 她的工作是洗衣服.

3) 作宾语

a) 作直接宾语, 用在 begin, start, stop, finish, like 等动词后面

Please stop talking. 请不要讲话.

The militiamen often practise shooting and grenadethrowing. 民兵经常练习射击和投弹.

b) 作介词的宾语

Our factory succeeded in *making* many new products. 我们工厂制造了许多新产品。

The May 7th cadre school is a new type of school for training cadres. 五·七干校是新型的培养干部的学校.

Instead of *going* to Chungshan Park, they went to the Zoo. 他们沒有去中山公园,到动物园去了.

By paying child labourers less the capitalists keep the adults' wages down. 资本家通过给童工较少的工资,而使成年工人的工资保持在低水平上.

4) 作定语

My father works in a printing shop. 我的父亲在一个印刷厂工作。

The factory built a swimming pool last spring. 工厂 在去年春天造了一个游泳池。

Our teacher uses a very good teaching method. 我 们教师的教学方法很好

13.16 动名词的否定结构 动名词否定结构由 not 加动名词组成, 如:

Trying without success is better than not trying at all. 试验沒有成功也比不试验好.

13. 17 动名词复合结构 物主代词或名词所有格加动名词,构成动名词复合结构. 在动名词复合结构中, 物主代词或名词所有格是逻辑上的主语, 动名词是逻辑上的谓语动词. 这种结构在旬中可作主语、实语等. 如:

Please excuse my interrupting you. 请原谅我打断你. (my interrupting you 作 excuse 的宾语)

Do you mind my smoking? 我可以抽烟吗? (my smoking 作 mind 的宾语)

Aunt Liu was very happy about Secretary Wang's coming to see her. 刘大娘很高兴王书记来看她. (Secretary Wang's coming 作介词 about 的宾语)

We are looking forward to the worker's coming to speak to us. 我们盼望那位工人来给我们作报告. (the worker's coming 作 look forward to 的宾语) Your going there will help a lot. 你到那里对事情将大有帮助. (your going there 作主语)

[注] 在口语中,这种结构中的名词往往不用所有格,而用通格,代词往往用宾格,不用物主代词,如上面第一、三两句可改变如下:

Please excuse me interrupting you.

Aunt Liu was very happy about Secretary Wang coming to see her.

下面再举几个例子:

His father agreed to him becoming an engine-driver. 他父亲同意他做火车司机.

Do you remember me and my mother coming to see you? 你还记得我和我母亲来看你吗?

Tides are caused by the moon and sun pulling water

toward them. 海潮是由于月亮和太阳吸引海水而引起的.

13. 18 动名词的时态

- 1) 动名词的时态形式
 - 一般式 writing 完成式 having written
- 2) 动名词的一般式 动名词的一般式所表示的动作与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生,或在谓语动词表示的动作之后.

Children enjoy watching colour TV. 儿童喜欢看彩 色电视. (enjoy 与 watching 同时)

The boy insisted on *joining* the PLA. 那个男孩坚持要参加解放军. (joining 发生在 insisted on 之后)注意下面两句中动名词所表示的动作发生在谓语动词表示的动作之前. 如:

Do you remember *cutting* rice on the state farm? 你记得在国营农场割水稻吗? (cutting 发生在 remember 之前)

- 1 shall never forget seeing Chairman Mao for the first time in 1966. 我永远不会忘记一九六六年第一次见到毛主席的情景. (seeing 发生在 forget 之前)
- 3) 动名词的完成式 动名词的完成式所表示的动作
- 发生在谓语动词表示的动作之前。
 - I regret having been unable to write to you earlier. 我很抱歉未能早点写信给你
 - His leg showed no symptom of having been injured. 他的腿不象受伤似的。

We were overjoyed at the news of China having launched another man-made satellite. 我们听到中国又发射了一颗人造卫星时都很高兴.

13. 19 动名词的被动语态 动名词有两种被动语态形式:

一般式 being written

完成式 having been written

如: This picture shows a child worker being beaten by the boss. 在这张照片上一个童工遭到老板毒打. Being criticized helped him see things more clearly. 他受到批评后对一些事情看得比较明白些了.

13. 20 动名词和动词不定式的比较 从结构上看,两者不同之点有:动名词前可用介词,它还可被名词(或代词)所有格修饰;不定式前通常不用介词,更不能被名词(或代词)所有格修饰

动名词和动词不定式在实际运用中,有下列各点值得注意:

1) 动名词所表示的动作,在意义上比较一般和抽象,时间观念不强,不指某一次动作;动词不定式则常表示某个具体动作.如:

I like skating. 我喜欢溜冰. (指我有这种爱好)
Would you like to skate today? 你今天想去溜冰吗? (指今天这一回)

The students *like playing* football. 这些学生喜欢 踢足球.(经常性的爱好)

Would you *like to play* football this afternoon? 你今天下午愿意踢球吗?(指一次的动作)

2) 动词不定式所表示的动作的逻辑主语常常是句子里的一个名词或代词,动名词所表示的动作的逻辑主语,可能是句子里的名词或代词,但也可能指一般人或物,如:

She *hates* to trouble you. 她不愿意麻烦你.(to trouble 的逻辑主语是 she)

She hates smoking. 她不喜欢吸烟. (smoking 的逻辑主语不一定是 she, 也可能是"别人")

3) 有些动词,如 stop, remember, forget,后接动名词和后接动词不定式,其意义有所不同。试比较:

Stop talking. 不要讲话! (talking 是宾语,指停止"讲话"这个动作)

Stop to think about it for a moment. 停下来想一想. (to think 是目的状语,指停下来,以便想一想)

The commune members stopped to have a rest at noon. 社员们中午停工休息,

1 remember seeing him. 我记得见过他. (已见过, 指过去的动作)

You must remember to post the letter. 你不要忘了寄这封信. (还沒有寄,指未来的动作)

4) 某些及物动词后面只能跟动名词作为它的直接宾语,不能跟动词不定式. 其中常用的有: finish (作完,结束), avoid (避免), enjoy (享受), regret (后悔), mind (在意,反对), insist on (坚持), object to (反对), give up (放弃),

practise (实践,练习), put off (延期)等.

Have you finished building the dam? 你们已经修完 水坝了吗?

- We should always follow the Party's advice and avoid making mistakes. 我们要永远听党的话,避免犯错误。
- I regret not being able to help you. 我很抱歉没有能帮助你.
- Would you mind repeating what you have just said? 你重复一下你刚才说过的话好吗?
- 5) 某些及物动词后只能跟动词不定式作为它的直接宾语. 常用的有: want (要想), wish (希望, 想要), hope (希望), agree (同意), promise (允诺), mean (打算), decide (决定), expect (期望), manage (设法), pretend (假装)等.
 - I hope to visit China again. 我希望再访问中国.
 - I wish to take this opportunity to make up for the lessons I have missed. 我想趁此机会把拉下的课补上.
- 6) 某些及物动词后可跟动名词也可跟动词不定式作它的直接宾语. 其中常用的有: begin (开始), start (开始), continue (继续), like (喜欢), hate (恨), prefer (宁愿), 等.
 - When did you begin learning (to learn) typewriting? 你什么时候开始学打字的?
 - Would you *prefer going (to go)* to the bookshop now or later? 你愿意现在到书店去呢,还是晚一点去?

13. 21 动名词和名词化的动名词的比较 二者形式相同。但动名词有动词性质(有时态和语态变化,可有宾语和状语),沒有复数,前面也不可用冠词。名词化的动名词(verbal noun)的用法则和一般名词完全一样:它沒有动词性质,有单复数形式,前面可用冠词。试比较:

She likes reading Lu Hsun's essays. 他喜欢读鲁 迅的杂文. (动名词)

The reading of The Dream of the Red Chamber took her about two weeks. 她花了差不多两周的时间读完《红楼梦》. (名词化的动名词)

They started cleaning their room at six. 他们六点 钟开始打扫房间. (动名词)

They gave the classroom a good sweeping and dusting. 他们把教室很好地打扫了一下. (名词 化的动名词)

reading 阅读(可作动名词或名词化的动名词) readings 读物(只能是名词化的动名词)

writing 写作 (可作动名词或名词化的动名词)

writings 作品 (只能是名词化的动名词)

关于名词化动名词再举几个例句:

The people, and the people alone, are the motive force in the *making* of world history. 人民,只有人民,才是创造世界历史的动力.

The building of the Nanking Yangtze River Bridge was a great victory of Mao Tsetung Thought. 南京长江大桥的建成是毛泽东思想的伟大胜利.

13.22 动名词和现在分词同作定语时的区别 动名词

215

作定语时,和它所修饰的名词在逻辑上沒有主谓关系,即它不是该名词的动作。现在分词作定语时,则和它所修饰的名词在逻辑上有主谓关系,它是该名词的动作。试比较:

leading comrades 领导同志 (leading 是现在分词 作定语,逻辑上 comrades 是 leading 的主语, leading comrades = comrades who lead.)

reading materials 阅读材料(reading 是动名词作定语,逻辑上 materials 决非 reading 的主语,reading materials = materials for reading.)

动名词作定语的例子还有:

- a reading-room 阅览室 drinking water 饮用水
- a writing course 一门写作课
- a sleeping car 臥车 (火车中可以睡觉的车厢) the getting-up bell 起床铃

四、分词

13. 23 意义和特征

- 1) 分词 (participle) 也是一种非限定动词, 它兼有动词和形容词的特征.
- 2) 分词可有宾语(仅限于现在分词)或状语,分词和宾语或状语一起构成分词短语.

13. 24 形式

1) 分词有现在分词和过去分词两种. 现在分词由动词原形后加词尾 -ing 构成. (详见 7.6 的 4)) 规则动词的过去分词由动词原形后加词尾 -ed 构成, 不规则动词的过去分词无一

定规则. (详见 7.6 的 3) 和附录一)

2) 现在分词有一般式和完成式,并有主动语态和被动语态,过去分词只有一般式,沒有完成式,也沒有主动语态.

	及物动词 Write		不及物动词go	
		主动语态	被动语态	(主动语态)
现在	一般式	writing	being written 🗲	going
分词	完成式	having written	having been written	having gone
过	去分词		written	gone

- **13.** 25 **现在分词和过去分词的区别** 现在分词和过去分词主要的区别表现在语态和时间关系上.
- 1) 语态上不同: 现在分词表示主动的意思,而过去分词 多由及物动词变来,表示被动的意思,试比较:

surprising 使人感到惊讶的 (主动)
surprised 自己感到惊讶的 (被动,即被惊讶的)
an exciting story 一个令人兴奋的故事 (主动)
excited spectators 激动的观众 (被动、即被引起激动)

{ the exploiting classes 剝削阶级 (主动) the exploited classes 被剝削阶级 (被动)

- a leading cadre 一个领导干部(主动)
- an unknown hero 一位无名英雄(被动)
- [注] 英语有一些表示感觉的及物动词, 其现在分词表示主动, 即"令人有某种感觉", 过去分词表示被动, 即"人被引起某种感觉",这两种分词在句中一般用作定语和表语. 除上面的 surprise 和 excite 二例字外,又如:
 - { a moving film 一部感动人的影片 a moved audience 受感动的观众

a tiring journey 累人的旅行
a tired football player 累了的足球运动员
He told us many interesting things last night. 他昨夜告诉我
们许多行趣的事情。
She is interested in astronomy, 她对天文学有兴趣。

这类动词还有: amuse (给…娱乐, 有趣), satisfy (满意), disappoint (失望), encourage (鼓励), inspire (鼓舞), discourage (使泄气), frighten (吃惊), bore (使厌烦) 等。

也有一些过去分词是由不及物动词变来的,它们只表示一个动作已完成,沒有被动的意味。如:

fallen leaves 落叶 the exploded bomb 已爆炸了的炸弹 a retired miner 退休矿工 returned students 归国留学生

2) 时间关系上不同:一般说来,现在分词所表示的动作往往正在进行,而过去分词所表示的动作,往往已经完成,试比较:

the changing world 正在变化着的世界
the changed world 已经起了变化的世界
boiling water 正在开的水
boiled water 已经煮开过的水 (可能是凉开水)
developing countries 发展中国家
developed countries 发达国家
the liberated areas 解放区
mended clothes 补过的衣服
a well-written article 一篇写得好的文章

man-made satellites 人造卫星

13. 26 分词和分词短语的用法

1) 作定语 作定语用的分词如果是 单 词, 一 般 放 在 它所修饰的名词之前。

I'm reading a very interesting book. 我在读一本很有趣的书。

He likes to drink cold boiled water. 他喜欢喝冷开水.

分词短语作定语用时,放在它所修饰的名词的后面。它的功用相当于定语从句。如:

China is a developing socialist country belonging to the third world. 中国是一个发展中的社会主义国家,属于第三世界. (= which belongs to the third world. 还要注意 developing 是分词作定语,放在名词 country 之前。)

The comrades working in the countryside will be back tomorrow. 在乡下劳动的同志们明天回来. (= who are working in the countryside)

Our factory set up a three-in-one leading group, made up of old, middle-aged and young cadres. 我们工厂组成了包括老、中、青干部的三结合领导小组。

2) 作表语

The Peking opera is very moving and instructive。 这个京剧很动人和有教育意义。

The cups are broken. 这些杯子是破的:

He is married. 他已经结婚了.

- 3) 作状语 分词在意义上也可用作状语,表示时间、原因,方式和伴随情况等。
 - a) 表示时间 (在意义上相当于表示时间的状语从句)
 Working in the cotton field, the peasants talked and
 laughed merrily. 农民在棉田里干活,愉快地又说
 又笑. (= while they were working in the cotton
 field)
 - Looking out of the window, I saw groups of Young Pioneers passing by the house. 我从窗口望出去,看见成群的少先队员从房子前面走过. (= when I looked out of the window)
 - Opening the drawer he took out a dictionary. 他打 开抽屉,拿出一本辞典 (= He opened the drawer and took ... 这两个动作是一个接着一个)
 - 【注〕 如果要强调分词短语所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生, 分词短语之前可用 when 或 while 等连词. 如:

 While working in the factory (= While I was working in the factory), I learnt a lot from the workers. 我在工厂工作期间, 从工人那里学到了很多东西.
 - b) 表示原因 (在意义上相当于表示原因的状语从句)

 Being a Party member, he is ready to go anywhere
 and do anything for the Party. 作为 (由于是) —

- 个党员, 他准备到任何地方去为党干任何工作. (= Since he is a Party member ...)
- Thinking that Chinese medicine might help, he went to a hospital of Chinese medicine. 他想中药也许有效,于是到一家中医医院去治病. (= As he thought that ...)
- Inspired by the spirit of the Party's Eleventh Congress, the workers worked even harder. 工人们在党的十一大的精神的鼓舞下, 更加努力工作. (= Since they are inspired by ...)
- c) 表示方式、伴随情况及结果(这种用法沒有相当的状语从句可以代替)
 - Laughing and talking, the students went out into the fields. 学生们又说又笑地到田里去。(方式)
 - He came running back to tell us the news. 他跑着回来告诉我们这个消息. (方式)
 - She stood there waiting for the bus. 她站在那儿等公共汽车. (伴随情况或方式)
 - The students worked with the peasants, levelling land and digging ditches. 学生跟农民一起平整土 地和挖沟. (方式)
 - The child fell, striking his head against the door and cutting it. 小孩摔了一跤, 头在门上碰破了。 (结果)
 - The children sat on small chairs, clapping as the foreign guests walked in. 外宾进来时,孩子们坐在小椅子上鼓掌欢迎 (伴随情况或方式)

- The old Red Armyman still works as an ordinary peasant, doing his bit in building the new socialist countryside. 这位老红军象一个普通农民一样干活。为建设社会主义新农村作贡献. (伴随情况)
- **13.** 27 分词的否定结构 由 not 后加分词构成. 如:

 Not knowing what to do, she went to the Party secretary for help. 她不知道怎么办,于是就请党支部书记帮助她.
- 13. 28 含有分词的复合宾语 分词可作复合宾语中的 宾语补足语 可有这种复合宾语的动词有 see, watch, hear, set, keep, find, have, get 等等.
 - We saw them walking across the road. 我们看见他们穿过那条马路.
 - We heard the children singing "I Love Peking's Tien An Men", 我们听见孩子们唱《我爱北京天安门》.
 - I found my home town almost completely rebuilt. 我 发现故乡几乎全部改建过了。
- 在 have 后面的复合宾语中,宾语补足语 多是过去分词,而它所表示的动作又往往由别人所完成.如:
 - We must get the television set repaired. 我们必须把电视机修好. (请别人修)
 - I had my watch mended in town. 我在城里修的表. (叫 別人修的)
 - If we have shortcomings, we are not afraid to have them pointed out and criticized, because we serve the people. 因为我们是为人民服务的, 所以, 我们如果有缺点, 就不怕别人批评指出. (请别人指出)

但 have 的复合宾语中的过去分词的动作有时不一定由 别人来完成, 如:

He had his arm broken. 他把手臂折断了. (不是别人给弄折的)

[注一] 上述句子结构变为被动语态时,除主语和宾语互换位置外,分词不动,如上面的第一、二例句即可变为:

They were seen walking across the road.

The children were heard singing "I Love Peking's Tien An Men".

[注二] 现在分词在复合宾语中和动词不定式在复合宾语中的意义稍有不同:后者指事情的全过程,目的在仅仅说明发生了这件事;前者指正在继续的动作的一部分,目的在将该动作当时进行的情景呈现于读者之前,其含义相当于进行时态.如:

I saw him go upstairs. 我看见他上楼去了。(看见他上楼整个过程, 只说明他上楼这件事)

I saw him going upstairs. 我看见他走上楼的. (只看见他上楼 这个动作的一部分, 我看见时他已在上楼, 说明他上楼的情景)

I was working in the room all morning. I heard somebody knock at the next door. 我整个上午在房间工作, 听见有人破隔壁房间的门. (听见敲门整个过程)

When I went back to the room, I heard her practising singing in the next room. 我回房间时听见她在隔壁房间练 跃.(只听见一部分,回去时她已开始唱了)

- **13.** 29 现在分词的时态 过去分词沒有时态形式的变化,所以这里只讲现在分词的时态形式。
 - 1) 现在分词的时态形式
 - 一般式 writing

完成式 having written

2) 现在分词一般式 表示的动作与谓语动 词表示的动作同时发生,或在谓语动词表示的动作之前发生.

Working in the commune, we learnt a lot from the

peasants. 我们在公社劳动的时候,向农民学到很多东西. (working 与 learnt 同时发生)

- Knowing that they were going to the factory next week, the students began to make preparations. 学员知道他们下星期要到工厂,所以都开始作准备(knowing 发生在 began 之前)
- 3) 现在分词完成式 表示的动作发生在谓语 动 词表示的动作之前,常常用作状语,表示时间或原因.

Having watered the vegetables, the women commune members took a short rest. 给蔬菜浇完水后,女社员们休息了一会儿. (having watered 发生在 took a short rest 之前,表示时间.)

Not having done it right, I tried again. 沒有做对, 我就又试. (not having done 发生在 tried 之前, 表示原因.)

Having done his homework, the schoolboy began to write his diary. 这个小学生做完作业后, 开始写日记. (having done his homework 发生在 began 之前,表示时间.)

13.30 现在分词的被动语态

一般式 being written 完成式 having been written

如 This is one of the many dams being built on the river. 这是沿河修筑的许多水坝之一.

Being surrounded, the Kuomintang troops were forced to surrender. 国民党军队被包围了,被迫投降.

Having been asked to stay, I couldn't very well leave.

人家请我留下,我就不好离开了,

Having been told that some guests were coming, they got the rooms ready. 在他们得到通知有客人要来后,即为客人准备房间.

13. 31 独立结构 (absolute construction) 分词短语 所表示的动作在逻辑上有主语,这种主语皆可在同一句中找 到. 如:

The young woman working over there is our team leader. 在那里工作的那位年轻妇女是我们的队长。(分词短语 working over there 的主语是 the young woman)

Having finished his work, he went out to play volleyball. 他做完了工作,出去打排球. (having finished his work 的主语是 he)

但有时分词短语有它自己的独立的主语,这种主语常常 是名词或代词,放在分词短语之前,这种结构叫做独立结构。 独立结构只用作状语,多用在书面语中,如:

We shall thresh the wheat, weather permitting. 天 气好的话,我们就打麦. (条件状语)

The question being settled, we wound up the meeting, 问题解决之后,我们就结束了会议.(时间状语)

Their room was on the first floor, its broad window overlooking the park. 他们的房间在二层楼上,房间里的一个宽大的窗户俯视着公园. (伴随情况状语, the first floor 在英国指第二层楼,在美国指第一层,其余可类推.)

We redoubled our efforts, each man working like

two. 我们加倍努力工作,一人干两人的活. (方式)

- We crossed the railway line. the platoon leader leading the attack himself. 我们穿过了铁路线, 排长带头进攻. (伴随情况)
- Almost all metals are good conductors, silver being the best of all. 几乎所有的金属都是良导体,银是最好的导体 (伴随情况)
- The meeting over, we all left the room. 会议结束以后,我们就都离开了房间. (时间状语,注意 over 之前省去了 being)
- 【往一〕 有的分词短语可以独立存在,在句中没有逻辑上的主语。它们往往已经变成固定的习惯语,必须熟记,如:

Generally speaking, this book is not very difficult. 总的说来,这本书并不很难. (generally speaking 的主语在句中找不到)

- Judging from what you say, he has done a very good job. 从 你的话看来,他的工作做得不错。
- Considering that he has been in China for only a year, he speaks Chinese well. 考虑到他到中国才一年, 他的中国话讲得很不错了.

类似的习惯用语尚有 talking of (谈起), speaking of (谈到) 等引导的分词短语。

【注二】 英语里还有一种"with+名词或代词宾格+分词(或形容词、介词 短语)"结构,也往往作状语用,表示伴随情况,如:

He fell asleep with the lamp burning. 他没有熄灯就睡着了.

上述结构中的分词亦可用形容词或介词短语代替. 如:

He sleeps with the windows open even in winter. 他即使在冬天也开着窗户睡觉.

A girl came in with a book in her hand. 一位姑娘手里拿着一本书走了进来. (在笔语中, 也可说: A girl came in, book in hand.)

第十四章 介词

一、概说

14.1 概说

- 1) 介词 (preposition) 叉叫前置词, 表示它后面的名词或 代词 (或相当于名词的其他词类, 短语或从句) 与其他句子成 分的关系.
- 2) 介词之后一般有名词或代词或相当于名词的 其他 词 类、短语或从句作它的宾语.
- 3) 介词是虚词,一般无句子重音,也不能单独做句子成分.
- 4) 很多介词从词义上往往看不出是介词. 如 against 的词义是"反对",在汉语里是动词,在英语里却是介词.
- 5) 介词与动词、名词、形容词常有比较固定的搭配,学习时应特别注意.
 - a) 和动词的固定搭配. 如:

add ... to ... 把…加在…上面 belong to 属于 compare ... with ... 拿…和…比较 rely on (upon) 依靠 interfere with 干涉

b) 和形容词、过去分词的固定搭配·如: afraid of 害怕 concerned about 关心
responsible for 对 (事) 负责
familiar with 熟悉
faithful to 对…忠实
full of 充满
satisfied with 对…满意

c) 和名词的固定搭配。如:
love for 对…的爱
neglect of 对…的疏忽
contribution to 对…的贡献
victory over 对…的战胜
struggle against 对…的斗爭

14. 2 介词的种类

- 1) 简单介词 (simple preposition) 如: at, in, on, since, from
- 2) 复合介词 (compound preposition) 如; as for 至于 as to 至于,关于 into 进入 onto 到…上面去 out of 从,出自
- 3) 二重介词 (double preposition) 如:
 from under 从…的下面
 from behind 从…的后面
 until after 直至…之后
 from among 从…当中
- 4) 短语介词 (phrasal preposition) 如:

according to 按照,根据 ahead of 在…之前 apart from 在…之外,且莫说 as compared with 和…比起来 because of 由于 by means of 以…为手段 by way of 路经,作为 due to 由于 for the purpose of 为了…目的 for the sake of 为…起见 in accordance with 根据 in addition to 加之于…之上,除…外 in comparison with 和…比较 in favour of 赞成 in front of 在…前面 in spite of 不顾,尽管 instead of 代替,而不 on behalf of 代表 on the part of 在…方面,出于…之所为 owing to 由于 up to 直到 with reference to 关于 with regard to 关于 with the exception of 除去,以…为例外 5) 分词介词 (participle preposition) 如: considering 考虑到 regarding 关于

including 包括 concerning 关于

14. 3 介词的位置 介词一般用在名词之前,但当它的 宾语为疑问代词、疑问副词或关系代词时,则可用在句子末 尾. 如:

Be prepared against war, be prepared against natural disasters, and do everything for the people. 备战、备荒、为人民.

Chairman Mao wrote On the Protracted War in his Yenan cave-dwelling in May 1938. 一九三八年五月,毛主席在延安窑洞里写了《论持久战》.

China is self-sufficient in grain. 中国粮食自给自足. 上面三句中的介词均在名词之前,下面几句中的介词在 句子末尾.

Where are you from? 你是什么地方人?

What are you talking about? 你在讲什么?

Do you remember the name of the book which the teacher referred us to? 你记得老师要我们参考的那本书的名字吗?

【注】 介词亦可放在句首疑问词或关系代词之前. 如: With whom did you get to the top of the mountain? 你和谁一起爬到山顶上去的?

At what time do you begin work every day? 你每天几点开始 工作? (at 在口语中可省去)

This is the book *from* which I got the story. 我就是从这本书 知道这个故事的.

14. 4 介词兼作副词和连词 有些介词可兼作副词和连词.

1) 有些介词可兼作副词. 如:

I have never read the book before. 以前我从未读过 这本书.

He looked around. 他向四周看看.

Please come over at once. 请你立刻过来.

Come in. 进来.

Tired as we were, we walked on. 我们尽管很累,但仍继续前进.

Come *along*; we're late already. 快,我们已经迟了. He went to Shanghai in 1958. He has never visited Peking *since*. 他一九五八年到上海去了. 从那以后他再沒有来过北京.

2) 有些介词可兼作连词. 如:

The train had started before I got to the station. 在 我到达火车站前,火车已经开了

I have been home only once since I came to the army farm. 自到军垦农场以后,我只回过一次家.

二、介词短语

14.5 介词短语 (prepositional phrase) 介词后面的名词 (或相当于名词的其他词类、短语或从句) 叫做介词宾语·介词和介词宾语合称为介词短语·

14.6 介词短语的用法

1) 定语

I have lost the key to the door of my room. 我把 房间的钥匙丢了。 A friend in need is a friend indeed. 思难朋友才是 真朋友.

2) 状语

In agriculture, learn from Tachai. 农业学大寨.

Lu Hsun wrote a lot of revolutionary articles under the white terror. 鲁迅在白色恐怖下写了许多革命的文章.

With Professor Liu's help, the young man has made rapid progress in his studies. 通过刘教授的帮助,这个青年人的研究工作进展很快.

Lessons begin at eight a. m. 上午八点开始上课.

3) 表语

Lao Chu and I are from the same county. 老朱和 我是同一个县的人.

That book will be of great value to you in your studies. 那本书对你的学习会有很大的价值。

The houses are of wood. 这些房子是木料做的.

The child is like his mother. 这个孩子象他母亲.

To be strict with a person is for his own good. 严是爱。

14. 7 介词短语与短语介词的区别 介词短语 是由 介词加宾语所构成,可以单独作为一个句子成分。短语介词是一个相当于介词的词组,不能单独作句子成分。试比较:

介词短语

短语介词

in front of the house

in front of 在…前面 according to plan 按照计划 ahead of schedule 在计划之前,提前 according to 根据 ahead of 在…之前

三、常用介词的主要用法举例

(依字母顺序)

14. 8 about

1) 关于

He is eager to know everything about the farm. 他 急于知道有关农场的一切事情.

You must tell me all about your experiences in Tibet. 你应该把你在西藏的所见所闻都告诉我.

At the exhibition, the students learned *about* the miserable life of the workers in the past. 学生 们在展览馆里了解到工人过去所受的苦·

2) 大约

It's about lunch time. 现在差不多是吃午饭的时候了。

About fifty thousand people saw the match yesterday: 大约有五万人看了昨天的比赛. (about 在此亦可作副词看)

3) 到处、在周围

The leading cadres went *about* the county. 领导干部走遍了全县.

Is Comrade Li anywhere about? 李同志在这儿吗?

14. 9 above (与 below 相反)

1) 在…上头, 高出

Above the blackboard there was a portrait of Chairman Mao. 黑板的上方有一张毛主席像.

The airplane flew *above* the clouds. 飞机在云层上飞行.

They put the people's interests above everything else. 他们把人民利益看得高于一切.

2) 以上,超过(数量、年龄等)

The machine weighs above ten tons. 这台机器有十 多吨重

The number was above ten. 为数在十以上。

14. 10 across

1) 橫过

There is a new bridge across the river. 河上有一座新桥.

The people's policeman helped the old woman across the street. 人民警察扶着老太太过了马路。

2) 在一的对面,在那一边

The commune repair shop is *across* the river. 公社 修配厂在河的对岸.

14. 11 after 在…之后 (与 before 相反)

Read after me, please. 请跟我念.

If you run after two hares you will catch neither. 如果你同时追两个鬼子,你会一个也抓不到.

We are going to a PLA unit to learn military affairs

the week after next. 下下周我们要到解放军某部 去学军.

14. 12 against

1) 靠着

Don't stand against the door. 不要靠门站着.

Shall we put the bookcase *against* the wall? 我们把 书橱靠着墙放好吗?

2) 反对 (与 for 相反)

The May 4th Movement was directed against imperialism and feudalism. 五四运动是反帝反封建的运动。

He is against the suggestion. 他反对这项建议.

14. 13 along 沿着, 顺着

Groups of schoolgirls walked along Changan Avenue. 一群群女学生沿着长安街走.

Since 1958 many small power stations have been built along the river. 一九五八年以来河的沿岸建了许多小型水电站。

14. 14 among 在…当中

She lived and worked among the villagers. 她和老 乡一起生活,一起劳动.

This is a common mistake among students. 这是学生当中一个普遍的错误.

[注] between 指在二者之间, among 指两个以上之间. 如:

Literature and art workers often go among the workers, peasants and soldiers. 文艺工作者经常到工农兵中去。

The train runs between Peking and Tientsin. 这列火车在北京和天津之间行驶。

14. 15 around (参看 14. 44)

1) 在…的周围

There are many trees around the Kunming Lake. 昆明湖周围有很多树.

The Pioneers sat around Lei Feng. 少先队员们围着雷锋坐着。

2) 在…那一边, 在转过…的地方

The co-op is just *around* the corner. 拐角过去就是合作就.

14. 16 as 作为

We are learning French as a second foreign language. 我们把法语作为第二外国语来学习.

My father began to work as a driver when he was twenty years old. 我父亲二十岁时开始当司机。

14. 17 at

1) 在 (小地方或地理上的一点)

They are staying at a hotel near Chienmen. 他们住在前门附近一家旅馆里.

He works at a cotton mill. 他在棉纺厂工作。

2) 在(时间的一点,如几点几分)

We have lunch at twelve. 我们十二点吃午饭.

I was writing a *dazibao at* nine thirty yesterday evening. 我昨晚九点半正在写大字报.

3) 在…的旁边(往往有目的)

The school bus will be ready at the gate tomorrow at 8. 明天上午八点校门口将有校车.

Early the next morning he was at his desk again.

第二天一早,他又伏案工作了。

4) 向

Somebody is knocking at the door. 有人敲门. What are you looking at? 你在看什么?

5) 对 (一般用于表示感情的动词之后)

The foreign visitors wondered at China's tremendous successes. 外宾对中国的巨大成就感到惊奇.

The overseas Chinese was surprised at the changes which had taken place in his village since 1949. 这位华侨对一九四九年以来他家乡所发生的变化感到惊奇。

6) 表示比率、速度、价格等

He ran at full speed. 他尽快地跑.

The car runs at the rate of sixty miles an hour. 这辆汽车每小时行六十英里.

We sell goods at fixed prices. 我们按定价售货.

[注一] 'in' 指空间范围内, 'at' 指空间的某一点. 如:

We met old Chang at the gate of the Palace Museum. 我 们在故宫大门口遇见老张.

I saw him in town. 我在城里看见他了.

[注二] 一般说来, 'at' 用在小地名前, 'in' 用在大地名前, 比如当我们 指到达某地点时, 小地方用 arrive at, 大地方用 arrive in. 如:

> We arrived at the village at three. 我们三点钟到达村子. The delegation arrived in Hangchow yesterday. 代表团昨

Re delegation arrived *in* Hangehow yesterd 天到达杭州.

14. 18 before (与 after 相反)

1) 在…的前面 (位置)
He is standing before the door. 他正站在门口.

2) 在…之前 (时间)

- Come and see me tomorrow any time *before* eleven a.m. 明天上午十一点钟以前来看我.
- My mother had to go out to work before liberation when she was still a child. 解放前当我母亲还是个孩子的时候,就不得不出去干活.
- **14**. 19 **behind 在…的后面**(与 after 不同, 只能表示 位置, 不能表示时间.)
 - There are many trees behind the building. 楼后面有许多树.
 - I don't think Hsiao Ying is behind the other boys in mathematics. 我认为小英的数学不比别的孩子差.

14. 20 below 在…的下面, 低于

Please sign your name below the line. 请在这条线的下面签字.

Oil usually lies thousands of feet *below* the earth's surface. 石油一般埋藏在地下几千英尺.

The temperature is three degrees below zero. 溫度是零下三度.

【注】 under 表示处于直线的下面, below 仅表示位置低于所提及的事物.

14. 21 beside 在…的旁边

Come and sit beside me. 过来坐在我的旁边。

There is a pumping-station beside the road. 路旁有一个抽水站.

14. 22 besides 除…外 (还…)

Besides English, we study politics and Chinese. 除 英语外我们还学习政治和汉语。

Besides silk, Hangchow has long been famous for its

Dragon Well Tea. 除丝绸外,杭州还久以产龙井茶而著名。

Besides giving the patients medical treatment, the doctors also make scientific research. 医生除给 病人看病外,还做科学研究.

[注] bosides 表示"除…之外, 还…", except 表示"把…不算在内"或 "把…除去", 如:

All except Hsiao Li went. 除小率外都去了. (小李没有去)

Besides Hsiao Li, many other comrades went. 除小李外, 还有很多别的同志也去了. (小李去了)

14. 23 between 在…二者之间

Between the door and the window there is a map of the world. 门和窗户的中间有一张世界地图.

Do you know the difference between the two verbs 'bring' and 'take'? 你知道 'bring' 和 'take' 这两个动词的区别吗?

[注] 关于 between 与 among 的区别见 14.14 [注].

14. 24 beyond

1) 在那一边

There is a village beyond the hills. 山的那一边有个村庄.

The paper mill of the commune is *beyond* the river. 公社的造纸厂在河的那边.

2) 超过能力范围

It's quite beyond me. 这个我可干不了,

14. 25 but 除去 (= except, 参见 14. 29)

All but one came to the meeting. 只有一个人沒有到会,

Comrade Chuang lives in the next room but one to me. 庄同志的房间和我的隔一个门。

In the revolution the proletarians have nothing to lose but their chains. They have a world to win. 无产者在这个革命中失去的只是锁链. 他们获得的将是整个世界。

14. 26 by

1)被(常用于被动结构,后接动作的主使者)

The woman was deeply moved by his selfless spirit. 这位妇女被他的无私精神深深地感动了.

All the village children go to the ten-year school run by the brigade. 村子里所有的小孩都在大队办的十年制的学校读书.

We heard a report by a PLA commander yesterday. 我们昨天听了一位解放军指挥员作的报告.

2) 在…的近旁

There is a chair by the table. 桌子旁边有一把椅子.

3) 在…之前, 不迟于

She had fulfilled the task by ten o'clock yesterday. 昨天十点钟的时候她已经完成这项任务了.

We shall have learned all the important grammar by the end of the year. 年底以前,我们将学完所有重要的语法项目.

4) 以…为手段

He succeeded by working hard. 他由于工作努力而获得成功.

By self-reliance and hard struggle the people of

Hsiyang turned the barren hills into fertile fields. 昔阳人民用自力更生、艰苦奋斗的精神,将穷山坡变成良田。

You can go to the station by underground. 你可以 坐地铁到车站去。

[注] by 后跟名词表示交通工具的还有: by plane 或 by air (坐飞机), by sea (乘船), by train (乘火车), by bus (坐公共汽车), by trolley-bus (坐无轨电车), by taxi (坐出租汽车)等.

5) 从旁经过,路过

When I go to the office, I pass by Pei Hai Park. 我 上班的时候, 要经过北海公园.

14. 27 down 沿…而下 (反义词是 up)

The child fell down the stairs and broke his arm. 小孩从楼梯上摔下来,跌断了胳臂.

Did you go down the pit? 你下矿去了吗?

The Eighth Route Army went down the mountain to attack the Japanese invaders. 八路军下山进攻日本侵略者.

We walked *down* the hill before sunset. 我们在日落 以前下山.

14. 28 during 在…时期当中

It happened *during* the Long March. 这件事情发生 在长征的时候.

14. 29 except 除…外 (指例外, 与 besides 不同, 见 14. 22 注)

We all went except him. 除他以外,我们都去了.

We have classes every day except Sunday. 除星期

天以外,我们每天都有课.

The translation is well done except for a few small mistakes. 除几处小错外,翻译练习做得很好.

He always takes part in the collective production *except* when sick or called away to meetings. 除 非生病或参加会议,他一直参加集体生产劳动.

14. 30 for

1) 为

Chairman Mao worked for the people's happiness. 毛主席为人民谋幸福.

It is time for dinner. 是吃正餐的时候了.

2) 对…而言

The boy is big for his age. 照他年纪来说,这男孩的个儿长得很大。

This lesson is too difficult for me. 这课书对我来说是太难了. (for 常和 too 连用)

Chinese medicinal herbs are good for many illnesses. 中草药能治好些病.

3) 经历, …之久 (指时间和距离)

We did exercises for one hour in the afternoon. 我们下午运动了一小时.

Our commune has had good harvests for ten years running. 我们公社连续十年夺得丰收.

The ground is level for several miles around. 好几英里之內地势都是平坦的.

4) 向

Early in the morning he left for the worksite. 他

一早就到工地去了,

5) 由于

The poor and lower-middle peasants praised this school teacher for her devotion to the Party's educational task. 贫下中农称赞这位女教师献身于党的教育事业的精神.

I think he should be criticized for being late. 我认 为他迟到应该受到批评。

6) 给

Here's a letter for you. 这儿有你的一封信.

7) 交換

I want to change this for that. 我想拿这个换那个. Aunt Li bought a sewing machine for 150 yuan. 李 大婶花一百五十元买了一台缝纫机.

8) 赞成

Are you for it or against it? 你赞成还是反对? I'm all for doing the work on our own. 我完全赞成我们自己干这件工作.

. 9) 对 (表示感情、才能等)

He has a passion for study. 他对学习有热情.

My mother's love for the Party is very great. 我母亲对党是非常热爱的.

She has a good ear for music. 她很能欣赏音乐.

10) 虽然, 尽管 = in spite of

I stick to my opinion for all that. 尽管如此,我还是坚持我的意见。

For all his shortcomings he is a good comrade. 他

尽管有缺点, 仍是个好同志.

14, 31 from

1) 从

We learnt a great deal from the poor and lower-middle peasants. 我们从贫下中农那里学到很多东西。

From 1937 to 1947, Yenan was the headquarters of the Central Committee of the Party. 从一九三七年到一九四七年,延安是党中央委员会所在地。

2) 来自

I often get letters from home. 我常收到家信.

Where does he come *from*? 他是什么地方人? (或: 他是哪儿来的?)

3) 兔于, 使不

The PLA man saved the boy from death. 解放军战士救了这个孩子的生命。

This woman worker at once threw herself on the floor and tried to stop the fire from spreading to the machines. 这位女工立刻扑倒在地,以免火蔓延到机器上去.

14. 32 in

1) 在…內 (地方, 着重范围)

The land reform was started in the village in 1947. 村子的土地改革于一九四七年开始.

London is in England. 伦敦在英格兰.

2) 在一段时期內

It is very cold in Heilungkiang in winter. 黑龙江 冬天银冷.

The Red Flag People's Commune was set up in 1958. 红旗人民公社是一九五八年建立的.

3) 在…方面

In industry, learn from Taching. 工业学大庆.

The students have made a great deal of progress in reading. 学生们的阅读有很大进步.

4) 用…语言

She keeps a diary in English. 她用英语写日记.

Marx wrote one of his great works in English—
The Civil War in France. 马克思的伟大著作《法兰西内战》是用英语写的.

Workers in this steel plant use technical materials in foreign languages. 这个钢厂的工人使用外交资料。

5) 身着

The PLA men are *in* green uniform. 这些解放军穿的是绿军装.

The comrade *in blue* is director of our commune's revolutionary committee. 穿蓝衣服的那位同志是我们公社革委会主任.

6) 以…形式,以…方式

Let's arrange the chairs in ten rows. 让我们把椅子 排成十排吧.

Young scientists and technicians are coming to the fore in large numbers. 年轻科技人才大批涌现出来. In this way we helped to increase agricultural pro-

duction. 我们就是这样使农业提高了产量.

7) 过…后 (未来时间)

I'll be back in a minute. 我一会儿就回来.

In a day or two the whole class will go and visit a chemical works. 一两天后全班同学要去参观一家化工厂。

8) 进入

I've put the pencil box in your desk. 我把铅笔盒 放在你的书桌里了。

Don't go in there. 不要走进那里去.

14. 33 inside 在…的里面 (与 outside 相反)

He was standing just *inside* the door. 他正在门里 面站着。

There is a Lu Hsun Museum inside Fuchengmen, Peking. 北京阜城门內有个鲁迅博物馆.

14. 34 into (与 out of 相反)

1) 进入

The children ran into the hall. 小孩们跑进大厅去. In October 1935 the Chinese Workers' and Peasants' Red Army marched triumphantly into northern Shensi. 一九三五年十月中国工农红军胜利进军陕北.

The model worker puts all his heart into his work. 这位模范工人全心全意地工作.

2) 变成

Comrade Wang, please translate the first sentence into English. 王同志,请你把第一句译成英语.

The river divides the city into two parts. 这条河把

全城分隔成两部分:

14. 35 like 象

Like the earth, Mars goes round the sun. 火星象 地球一样, 围绕太阳运行.

This comrade looks *like* my brother. 这位同志很**象** 我哥哥.

14. 36 near 近于, 在…附近 (反义词是 far from)
That hospital was near Yenan. 那个医院在延安附近。

14. 37 of

1) 所有关系

Peking is the capital of China. 北京是中国的首都. It was the first day of the new term. 那是新学期的第一天.

2) 部分关系

a kind of paper 一种纸 a group of students 一组(群)学生 a lot of paper (workers) 很多纸 (工人) a piece of wood 一块木头 a glass of water 一杯水 a jar of alcohol 一瓶酒精 a packet of cigarettes 一盒香烟 a box of matches 一盒火柴 3) 描写关系 a man of thirty 三十岁的人

湖南人

4) 承受动作 (参看2.11 的 2))

a man of Hunan

the exploitation of man by man 人对人的剝削 the overthrow of the Hitler fascist dictatorship 希 特勒法西斯专政的被推翻

5) 同位关系

the city of Chungking

重庆城

the port of Dairen

大连港

6) 关于, 对于

What do you think of the Young Pioneers' performance? 你觉得少先队员的表演怎么样?

I never heard of the book. 我从来没听说过这本书.

They are singing of the great unity of the working people of all countries. 他们在歌唱全世界劳动人民的大团结.

14.38 off 从…离开

He fell off the bike. 他从自行车上摔下来.

The ship anchored off the coast. 那艘船在海岸外抛锚

The island is off the south coast of China. 这个岛 靠近中国南海岸.

He is off duty today. 他今天休息.

14. 39 on

1) 在与某物相接触的表面上

There is a beautiful calendar *on* the wall. 墙上有一个漂亮的目历.

We spent the whole afternoon rowing on the lake. 我们整个下午都在湖上划船。

2) 在(某日或某目的上午、下午、晚上)

- We have physical culture classes *on* Mondays and Thursdays. 我们星期一和星期四有体育课.
- Lenin was born on April 22, 1870. 列宁诞生于一八七〇年四月二十二日.
- They usually have Party activities on Saturday afternoon. 他们星期六下午一般有党的活动.

3) 在(边)

On the right side of the picture, an old woman is reading a newspaper. 画的右边,有一个老太太在 读报.

The speaker is *on* the left of the chairman. 作报告 的人在主席的左边.

4) 论述

This is a book *on* electronics. 这是一本关于电子学的书。

We have studied On Practice and On Contradiction. 我们学习了《实践论》和《矛盾论》.

5) —…就…

On entering the room, he found Lao Wang waiting for him. 一进房间,他就发现老王在等他.

14. 40 out of 从…出来, 在…之外

Political power grows out of the barrel of a gun. 枪杆子里面出政权

The boys rushed out of the classroom. 男孩子们从教室里冲了出去。

We spent a lot of time practising out of class. 我们课外花了很多时间练习。

The injured worker is out of danger. 受伤的工人脱险了。

14. 41 outside 在…外面 (与 inside 相反)

They waited for us *outside* the station. 他们在车站外面等我们。

The foreign visitors got a warm welcome at a commune outside Shanghai. 外宾在上海郊区一个公社受到热烈欢迎.

14. 42 over

1) 在…之上 (与 under 相反)

On October 1, 1949 Chairman Mao raised the fivestar red flag over Tien An Men Square. 一九四 九年十月一日,毛主席在天安门升起了五星红旗.

There is a lamp over the table. 桌子上面挂着一盏灯.

2) 遍干

The news spread over the city. 消息传遍全域.

Liu Hu-lan was murdered, but her brave spirit will always inspire young people all over the country. 刘胡兰被杀害了, 但是她的英勇的精神将永远鼓舞着全国的青年人.

3) 餴临

The mother bent over the child. 妈妈俯身向着孩子。

4) 超过, 多于 (over 在此亦可作副词看)

We have now *over* thirty factories in the district. 我们区里现在有三十多个工厂。

5) 越过

Can you jump over the ditch? 你能跳过这条沟吗? The plane flew over the city. 飞机在城市上空飞过。

6) 关于(问题)

We argued over the matter, but soon we reached an agreement. 在这个问题上我们争论了起来,但 很快就取得了一致的意见。

7) 优于

Our troops prevail over the enemy. 我们的军队压倒敌人。

Transistors have many advantages over vacuum tubes. 晶体管比真空管有许多优点.

14. 43 pasi 过

at ten past four 在四点十分

at a quarter past one 在一点一刻

at half past seven 7

一在七点半

He is past sixty.

他六十多岁了,

He went past us.

他从我们旁边走过去,

14. 44 **round 环绕** (多表示在某物周围的动作, around 则多表示在某物周围的静物), **在各处**

The earth goes round the sun. 地球围绕太阳旋转. The deputy director of the factory took the foreign visitors round the workshops. 副厂长带领外宾参观车间.

14. 45 since 自…以来, 自从

Great progress has been made in medical work since literation. 解放以来, 医疗工作取得了很大进步.

The commune has achieved a lot since 1958. 一九 五八年以来,这个公社取得了很多成就.

14. 46 through 通过

1) 通过(表示地点等)

We have to pass *through* the town to get to the factory. 我们必须穿过这个城镇才能到达工厂,

The Red Flag Canal runs through the Taihang Mountains. 红旗渠穿过太行山.

The coal-miners worked all through the Spring Festival. 煤矿工人整个春节期间照常生产.

We soon saw *through* the class enemy's plot. 我 们即时识破阶级敌人的阴谋.

2) 山于,通过等(表示原因、方式等)

The working class exercises leadership over the state through its vanguard, the Communist Party of China. 工人阶级通过自己的先锋队中国共产党实现对国家的领导.

The experiment failed through no fault of ours。 试验不是由于我们的过错而失败了.

14. 47 throughout 全, 到**外**

The revolutionary struggle of the oppressed people throughout the world is surging forward. 全世界 受压迫人民的革命斗爭风起云涌.

White terror spread throughout the city before liberation. 解放前白色恐怖笼罩全城。

14. 48 till 直到…为止 (not ... till 到…才, 不到…不…)

- I shall stay in the factory *till* July. 我在工厂一直要呆到七月.
- He did not come *till* five o'clock. 他一直到五点钟 才来。
- Secretary Li usually does not go to bed *till* midnight. 李书记通常到半夜才睡觉.
- The radio worked all right *till* last night. 这台收 音机一直到昨天夜晚还是好的.

14. 49 to

1) 到

The next day we came to a small mountain village. 第二天我们来到了一个小山村.

To this day I still remember Political Instructor Wang's advice. 我到今天还记得王教导员的话.

2) 向

Come to me if you want anything. 需要什么的话, 找我好了

We are marching to Tien An Men. 我们向天安门 行进.

3) 给

'Give it to me. 把它给我,

Hsiao Li rushed home at once to pass on the good news to his mother. 小李立刻跑回家去,把这个好消息告诉他母亲.

4) 对

1 could not find the key to my bicycle lock. 我自 行车的钥匙找不到了。

You should speak to our team leader about it. 你应该和我们队长谈谈这件事.

5) 差 (指时间)

at ten to seven 七点差十分 (比较 ten past seven 七点十分)

at a quarter to twelve 十二点差一刻

14. 50 toward(s) 向, 对, 近

Toward(s) the end of the class we had dictation. 在快下课的时候我们作听写.

Day and night the Red Army pushed towards the Luting Bridge. 红军日夜向泸定桥进军.

Comrade Yeh's attitude towards his comrades is quite correct. 叶同志对待同志的态度很对.

14. 51 under 在…的下面 (与 over 相反)

Your pen is under the paper. 你的钢笔在纸的下面.

In 1949, under the leadership of Chairman Mao, the Chinese people put an end to the evil rule of the Kuomintang reactionaries. 在毛主席的领导下,中国人民于一九四九年结束了国民党反动派的罪恶统治.

Another reservoir is *under* construction in the hilly area. 山区在造一个新水库.

14. 52 until 直到…为止 (与 till 同义)

The conference will have to be postponed *until* this evening. 会议将推迟到晚上举行.

Not *until* then shall we meet again. 到那时我们才会再见.

14. 53 up 沿…而上 (与 down 相反)

Terraced fields climb up the hills. 梯田绕川岗.

The boy ran quickly up the tree. 男孩很快爬上 树.

√14. 54 upon 在…的上面 (多指抽象概念, 其用法与表示抽象概念的 on 同.)

You can depend upon (on) me. 相信我好了.

We depend *upon* (on) our own efforts in building socialism. 我们依靠自己的努力建设社会主义。

14. 55 with (与 without 相反)

1) 和, 和…一起

He is talking with Lao Wang. 他在和老王谈话.

He lives and works with the peasants. 他和农民同住同劳动。

2) 用…工具, 用…

The tree was cut down with an axe. 树是用斧子砍倒的,

Don't write with that pencil. 不要用那支铅笔写.

3) 以, 具有

The ground was covered with snow. 满地都是雪.

Hangchow is a city with a long history, 杭州是→ 个具有悠久历史的城市。

The steel workers are working with great enthusiasm. 钢铁工人们正以高度的热情工作着.

With the Party's leadership we can overcome all difficulties. 有党的领导, 什么样的困难都能战胜。

4) 带, 伴同

It looks like rain, take an umbrella with you. 看样子要下雨, 你带把雨伞吧.

With these words, he left the room. 说了这些话之后, 他就离开了房间.

The minister and his guests sat at the table, with the interpreter sitting behind them. 部长和客人坐在桌子面前,翻译坐在后面.

5) 由于(表示原因)

The boys and girls were soaked with sweat. 男女孩子们都被汗水湿透了。

My fingers were stiff with cold. 我的指头冻僵了。 [注] 关于 with + 独立结构, 见 13. 31 的[注二].

14. 56 within

1) 在…里面

By X-rays we can see what is within the body. 我们可以通过爱克斯光看见人体內部.

2) 以內, 不超出(距离、时间、范围等)

There are many factories within two miles of this place. 这里两英里以內有许多工厂. (注意: 这里的 of 不可改为 from.)

We shall come back within an hour. 我们将在一个钟头之内回来.

You must live within your income. 你应该量入为出.

This work is within my reach. 这项工作是在我能力 范围内的

14. 57 without (= not with) 表示 "没有" 的概念 He rushed to the factory without having his breakfast. 他沒吃早饭就赶到工厂里去了:

I can read the book without a dictionary. 我可以不用词典读这本书.

Without the sun, nothing would grow. 要是沒有太阳, 世界上就不会有生物.

第十五章 连词和感叹词

一、连词概说

15. 1 概说

1) 连词 (conjunction) 连接词、短语、从句或句子的词, 叫做连词. 如:

Never forget classes and class struggle. 千万不要忘记阶级和阶级斗爭. (and 连接 classes 和 class struggle 两个名词)

The veteran worker is old but strong. 这位老工人 年纪大但仍然健康. (but 连接 old 和 strong 两个 形容词)

Will they arrive in the morning or in the afternoon? 他们上午来还是下午来? (or 连接 in the morning 和 in the afternoon 两个短语)

Comrade Yang Kai-hui is dead, but she lives forever in the hearts of the people. 杨开慧同志牺牲了, 但她永远活在人民的心中. (but 连接两个简单句)

Nothing is hard in this world if you dare to scale the height. 世上无难事,只要肯登攀. (if 连接主句和从句)

2) 连词是虚词 在句中不重读, 也不能在句中单独作句子成分。

- 3) 在英语里连词要比在汉语里用的多 汉语里往往不需用连词,但在英语中要用. 如汉语说"我们拿着书到阅览室去",译成英语是: We took our books and went to the reading-room.
- **15.** 2 **种类(一)** 从连词本身的含义及其所连接的成分的性质来看,可分为两类:
- 1) 等立连词 (co-ordinative conjunction) 连接彼此是并列关系的词、短语、从句或句子的连词, 叫做等立连词. 如 and, or (或者, 否则), but (但是), for (因为), therefore (所以), not only ... but also (不仅…而且), neither ... nor (既不…也不)等.
- 2) 从属连词 (subordinative conjunction) 引导从句的连词,叫做从属连词,从属连词又可分:
- a) 引导名词性从句 (即主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句) 的有: that, if (是否), whether (是否) 等.
- b) 引导状语从句的有: when (在…时候), although (虽然), though (虽然), if (假如), because (因为), so that (结果) 等.

15. 3 种类(二) 从连词本身的形式来看, 又可分为:

- 1) 简单连词 (simple conjunction) 如: for (因为), but (但是), since (自从, 既然), after (在…后) 等.
- 2) 关连连词 (correlative conjunction) 常常成对运用, 如: both ... and (…和), not only ... but also (不仅…而且), as ... as (同…—样)等.
- 3) 分词连词 (participial conjunction) 由动词的分词转变成为连词,如: supposing (设若), provided (倘若), considering (考虑到) 等.

- 4) 短语连词 (phrasal conjunction) 如: as if (犹如), as soon as (一经…就), in order that (以便) 等.
 - [注] 关于连词用法,详见下面常用连词用法举例及本书中各有关句法部分。

二、常用连词举例(包括连接副词)

(依字母顺序)

15. 4 after 在…之后

- After we had listened to the report, we held a discussion on it. 听完报告之后,我们进行了讨论.
- I arrived at the station after the train had left. 我 到车站时火车已开了。

15. 5 although 虽然 (= though)

- Although there was a severe drought, the team got a bumper harvest. 尽管大旱,这个生产队仍获得 丰收.
- Although he was in poor health, he worked just as hard as everyone else. 虽然他体弱多病,但他工作和別人一样地努力.
- Though feeling ill, she went to school. 她病了还 去上学.
- 【注】 although 不可和 but 连用, 但可和 yet, still 连用.

15. 6 and 和, 并且

My uncle lives and works in Taiyuan. 我的叔父在太原居住和工作。

- Grasp revolution, promote production and other work and preparedness against war. 抓革命, 促 生产, 促工作, 促战备.
- Lei Feng joined the Children's Corps, and soon he became its head. 雷锋参加了儿童团, 不久成为团长。
- Next week we shall send some new tractors and harvesters to the commune. And we shall also help them to set up some repair shops. 下星期我们将送一些新的拖拉机和收割机到公社去. 我们还将帮助他们这个公社建立一些修配厂.(上面第二句的第一个词 and 在这里连接两个句子. 由于两句关系较松,故将 and 大写,另起一句.如这两句关系较紧, and 即可小写,前面的句号则改为逗号.)
- [注一] 注意下面例句中的 and, 用来连接两个动词, 其作用与表示目的 的动词不定式相当. 这样的 and 通常用在口语中.

I'll go and fetch some water. 我去打水.

Come and see our village. It's quite different now. 来看看 我们村子吧. 现在完全变样了.

[注二] and 有时用在下面的特殊结构里, and 前面的部分 (常是祈使句结构) 可用来表示假设或条件:

Grasp class struggle *and* all problems can be solved. 阶级斗争,一抓就灵。

Try again and you will succeed. 再试一次, 你就会成功了,

Give me one more minute and I'll have finished. 再给我一分钟,我就能够完成.

15. 7 and yet 然而, 可是 (较 yet 口语化)

The worker hunted for jobs in New York for months,

and yet he could not find any work. 这个工人在纽约找工作已有几个月之外,可是他仍然找不到工作.

15. 8 as

1) 如…一样 (表示比较)

Just as Marx and Engels were founders of the First International, Lenin was the founder of the Third International. 正如马克思、恩格斯是第一国际的创始人,列宁是第三国际的创始人.

Do not make the same mistake as I did. 不要犯 和我同样的错误.

2) 当, 随着 (表示时间)

As a child he lived on a farm. 他小时候住在一个 农场上. (as a child 在这里等于 when he was a child)

As i was coming here, I met Comrade Ting. 我来这儿的时候, 碰见了丁同志.

As it became more common for women to work outside the house, men began to share the housework. 随着妇女就业普遍了,男职工分担了家务劳动.

We took notes as we listened to the lecture. 我们 边听课边记笔记.

3) 由于 (参看 18. 28 的 [注]) (表示原因)

As he was not feeling well, we all told him to stay at home. 由于他感到不舒服,我们都要他呆在家里.

- As his family was unable to pay, Kao Yu-pao was forced to give up his studies. 由于高玉宝的家里 付不起钱, 他被迫退学,
- 4) 按照, 正如(表示方式)

Do as the Party says. 党怎么说咱们就怎么办。

- As Lenin pointed out time and again, imperialism means war. 列宁多次指出,帝国主义就是战争。
- 5) 虽然,尽管 (= although, 但 as 必须在主语之前,表语或谓语动词之后)
 - Ill as my grandfather was, he had to go on working for the landlord. 我祖父尽管病了,还得给地主扛活.

Small as they are, atoms are made of still smaller units. 原子尽管小,它由更小的单位构成。

15. 9 as ... as 和···一样

Lao Li planted rice seedlings as fast as anyone else. 老李插秧和其他人一样快.

This reservoir is as big as that one. 这个水库和那个水库一样大.

15. 10 as far as 就

- As far as we know, we shall visit the steel mill on Tuesday. 就我们所知,我们将于星期二参观钢铁厂.
- As far as I am concerned, I know nothing about it. 就我而论,我对这件事一点也不知道.
- As far as the superpowers are concerned, things are in a mess. 超级大国的事情很不美妙.

15. 11 as if 宛如 (=as though)

It looks as if it is going to rain. 看起来好象要下雨.

Grandma Li treated the wounded soldiers as if they were her own children. 李奶奶把这些伤员当作她的子女一样看待.

He spoke as if he had been here before. 他说话 的口气好象他以前到这里来讨.

15. 12 as long as (so long as)

1) 只要 (表示条件)

So long as imperialism and social-imperialism exist, there can be no peace in the world. 只要帝国主义和社会帝国主义存在,世界上就不可能有和平,

2) 有…之久 (表示时间)

You may keep the book as long as you like. 这本 书你愿意借多久就借多久.

Stay as long as you like. 你愿意呆多久都行.

15. 13 as soon as —…就…

The Red Army rushed the enemy as soon as it crossed the Tatu River, 红军一过大渡河就冲向敌人.

Will you tell him as soon as he gets back? 他一回来你就告诉他好吗?

15. 14. as well as 和, 同

In New China women enjoy equal rights with men in political life as well as in family life. 新中国的妇女在政治和家庭方面享有和男人同等的权利。

15. 15 because 因为 (参看 18. 28 的 [注])

Hsiao Wang is making rapid progress because he knows why he is studying English. 小王学习英语讲步很快,因为他知道为什么学习.

15. 16 before 在…之前

We suffered a great deal before our town was liberated. 在我们的城市解放以前,我们受了很多苦难。

It will not be long before you can go back to the front. 不要好久你就可以回到前线去了,

It grew dark before we finished our work. 我们还 沒干完活, 天就黑了.

15. 17 besides 此外

It is late; besides I am too tired to go out. 时间不早了,再说我也很累,不想出去.

15. 18 both ... and ... 和, 不但…而且…

Both teachers and students will go and work in the factory tomorrow. 老师和学生明天都要到工厂去劳动。

15. 19 but 但是, 可是, 而

This tool is not made of iron but of steel. 这个工具不是铁制的,而是钢制的. (but 与 not 连用时,可译作"而")

The sentence may be correct grammatically, but it is not good English. 这句话语法尽管正确, 但不是好英语. (but 常和 may 连用)

I'm sorry to trouble you, but can you show me the way to the Capital Gymnasium? 对不起,打扰你

了,你可以告诉我到首都体育馆怎么走吗? (but 常和 sorry 连用)

15. 20 but then 但是另一方面

She is very hard-working indeed, but then she always has been, hasn't she? 她的确很努力,不过话又说回来了,她一向都这样,不是吗?

15. 21 by the time 到…时候

By the time we got there, the show had begun. 我们到那里的时候,表演已经开始了。

15. 22 either ... or 或…或…, 非此…即彼

Either you come to the office now, or wait for me at home. 你要么现在到办公室来,要么就在家里等我.

Everything around us is either solid, liquid or gas. 我们周围的东西不是固体、液体,就是气体.

15. 23 even if (= even though) 即使,纵然

It won't matter *even if* he doesn't come; he has handed in his opinion in writing. 即使他不来也 沒有关系, 他已经用书面提出了意见.

Even if there are difficulties we must do the job well 即使有困难,我们也要把这项工作作好。

15. 24 even though 即使, 纵然 (=even if)

Even though half the beds in the hospital were empty, the white racists would not take in any black patients. 即使医院的病床一半都空着,白人种族主义者也不肯收留一个黑人病人。

15. 25 every time 每当

Every time we had difficulties, the old peasant would come to help. 我们一碰到困难,这位老农就来帮助我们

Every time my father comes to Peking, he goes to visit the Monument to the People's Heroes with respect. 我父亲每次来北京,总要去敬谒人民英雄纪念碑.

15. 26 for 因为 (参看 18. 28 的 [注])

She felt no fear, for she was a brave girl. 她不感到害怕,因为她是一个勇敢的姑娘.

It took us some time to get there, for it was a long way to go. 因为路很远,我们好久才到那里

- 15. 27 hence 所以

The present perfect tense is always connected with present time, hence it is not used with expressions of past time like "yesterday," "last year," etc. 现在完成时总是和现在有关,所以它不能和表示过去时间的说法如"昨天"、"去年"等一道用

15. 28 however 然而,可是,无论如何

We decided not to wait for him. He came back, however, before we left. 我们决定不等他了.可是在我们走以前,他却回来了.

However bad the weather may be, we shall have to plant the rice seedlings. 不管天气怎么不好,我们也得把稻秧插下去.

15. 29 if

- 1) 是否 (=whether 连接宾语从句) (参见 18.11 的 2) I wonder if we'll have chemistry lab this afternoon. 我们今天下午做不做化学实验?
 - I wonder if you would mind giving me a hand for a few minutes. 你帮我一会儿行吗?
- 2) 假如 (连接条件状语从句) (参见 18. 33) He will come *if* you ask him. 你如果请他, 他就会来.
 - If you want to know the theory and methods of revolution, you must take part in revolution. 你要知道革命的理论和方法, 你就得参加革命.
- 15. 30 in case 以防, 以免, 因恐

The doctor went with us to the worksite *in case* there was any accident. 大夫和我们一起去工地以防万一.

15. 31 in order that 为了, 以便

We all got up early *in order that* we might start at seven. 为了在七点钟出发,我们很早就都起来了.

We completed the dam in July in order that the land might not be flooded. 我们在七月以前修好 堤坝, 以免地被淹掉.

15. 32 in the meantime 当…之时, 同时

He will be back in ten minutes. *In the meantime* let's wait outside. 他过十分钟就回来,在他回来之前我们在外面等等他吧,

15. 33 lest 因恐, 以免

Take care *lest* you catch influenza. 小心不要患流 行性感冒.

Remind me of it *lest* I (should) forget. 提醒我一下,以免我忘了。

Take your umbrella with you *lest* it should rain. 带着你的雨伞,以防下雨.

15. 34 neither ... nor 既不…亦不,…都不

I am for the slogan "Fear neither hardship nor death". 我赞成这样的口号, 叫做"一不怕苦, 二不怕死".

A gas has neither fixed size nor shape. 气体沒有一定的体积,也沒有形态.

[注] 在下面的句子中,连词 neither 的意思是"也不": I don't like it.—Neither do I. 我不喜欢它.——我也不喜欢。

15.35 nevertheless 然而, 但是

He met with difficulties; nevertheless he went on working. 他遇到了困难,但是他继续干下去。

The worker was busy; nevertheless he spent much time helping us. 这位工人很忙, 但他还是花了很多时间来帮助我们

15. 36 no matter 不论 (后接疑问词)

That is wrong, no matter who says it. 不管谁说的, 这都是错误的.

No matter how difficult the task may be, we must fulfil it this week. 不管任务多么艰巨,我们在这个星期必须把它完成.

No matter what twists and turns lie in front of us,

our future is bright. 不管有多少曲折,我们的前 涂是光明的.

15. 37 nor 也不

Without the workers' help, you can't do it. Nor can we. 如果沒有工人的帮助,你们做不了这件事。我们也做不了。

He is not from the south. Nor am 1. 他不是南方人,我也不是.

【注】 以 nor 开头的句子必须倒装。

15. 38 no sooner ... than —…就…

No sooner did they get to the field than they started to work. 他们一到田里就开始工作了。

15. 39 not only ... but also 不但…而且

The old worker *not only* gave us a lot of advice, *but also* helped us to do the job. 这个老工人不但给我们出了很多主意, 幷且还帮我们干活.

【注】 also 有时可省去.

15. 40 now; now that 现在既然

Now that the advanced worker is here, we can ask him to give us a talk. 现在既然这位先进工作者在这里,我们可以请他给我们作报告.

Now that I come to think of it, I promised to call him up at 2 o'clock. 我想了想, 我确是答应过 两点钟给他打电话.

Now you are here, you'd better stay. 现在你既然来了, 那就别走了.

15. 41 on the contrary 恰恰相反

The book is not easy. On the contrary, it's rather difficult. 这本书不容易. 恰好相反,它相当难.

In spite of the serious drought, the brigade's production did not decrease. On the contrary, its wheat output increased by 10 per cent. 尽管有严重的干旱,大队并沒减产,小麦产量反而提高一成.

15. 42 on the one hand ... on the other (hand) — 方面… 另一方面

The factors for both revolution and war are increasing. On the one hand, the third world is rapidly awakening. On the other hand, the rivalry between the superpowers for world hegemony is becoming ever more acute. 目前革命和战争的因素都在增长,一方面,第三世界正在迅速觉醒,另一方面,超级大国爭夺世界霸权日益加剧.

15. 43 once — □

The line is the key link; once it is grasped, everything falls into place. 路线是个纲, 纲举目张.

Once you know the rules of swimming, you will be able to swim well. 你一旦掌握了游泳的规律,就会游得很好.

15. 44 only 只是, 不过

"You can leave the hospital now, only don't do heavy work," said the doctor. 大夫说:"你可以出院了,不过不要干重活."

I'd be too glad to help, only I'm going away on business. 我很愿帮助你,只是我要出差.

15. 45 or

1) 或

After supper we often listen to the news or go for a walk. 晚饭后我们常常不是听新闻广播,就是散步.

Will you be going to Shanghai by train or by plane? 你们是坐火车还是乘飞机到上海去?

2) 否则 5

Take a flash-light with you, or you'll lose your way in the dark. 带一个手电,要不你在黑暗中会迷路的.

- **15.** 46 or else 否则 (用法与 or 相同, 但口气较重.) Hurry up, or else you'll miss the last bus. 赶快, 要不你会赶不上最后一班车.
- 15. 47 otherwise 否则 (较 or 和 or else 的语气要

强)

You must work hard; otherwise you will not learn English well. 你一定得努力学,否则你会学不好英语.

You must take the initiative. Otherwise you will fail. 你们必须掌握主动权,否则就会失败.

15. 48 provided 如果, 以…为条件 (=provided that) I will come provided I have time. 我如有时间一定来.

- It is hard to avoid mistakes; provided they are conscientiously corrected, it will be all right. 犯错误是难免的,只要认真改了,就好了.
- 15. 49 scarcely ... when (before) —…就…

They had scarcely come in when it began to rain. 他们刚一进来,就下起雨来了.

[注] scarcely ... when (before) 与 hardly ... when (before) 的用法 和意义相同。

15. 50 since

- 1) 由于, 既然 (参看 18. 28 的 [注]) (表示原因)
 - Since the mountain was so steep, the PLA detachment decided to take the enemy fort by stratagem. 由于山太陡,解放军小分队决定智取敌据点.
- 2) 自从…以来 (表示时间)

Since he joined the Party, Old Chang has made great progress. 老张自入党以来,有了很大的进步

He has worked in the factory since Peking was liberated. 北京解放以来,他一直在这工厂工作。

15. 51 so 于是 (如用 and so, 则较口语化)

We wanted to learn the English songs, so we asked the teacher to teach us. 我们想学英文歌,于是就请老师教我们.

There are nurseries so mothers can work. 由于有 托儿所,母亲可以工作

15. 52 so far as 就 (=as far as)

15. 53 so ... that 如此…以致 (表示结果)

Our group did so well in the field that we were praised by the peasants. 我们小组在地里干得很好,受到农民的称赞.

The performance put on by the children was so good that the audience was very impressed. 小孩的表演很精彩, 给观众很深的印象.

We were so moved that we shouted "Long Live Chairman Mao!" 我们威动得都高呼"毛主席万岁!"

15. 54 so that

1) 以便 (表示目的)

We held a meeting so that we might discuss the matter thoroughly. 为了把这件事彻底讨论一下, 我们开了一个会.

The Party Committee has called on the workers to put forward opinions so that the leadership can be improved. 党委号召工人提意见,以便改进领导工作.

2) 所以 (表示结果).

Every method possible was tried, so that they were able to find out which was the best. 因为所有的方法都试验了,所以他们能够找出哪一个是最好的方法.

15. 55 still 可是, 还 (有时用 but still)

Chang Szu-teh was praised many times, *still* he remained modest. 张思德多次受表扬,但他仍然保持谦虚.

15. 56 than 比 (用于形容词或副词的比较级)

The Pacific Ocean is larger *than* the Atlantic Ocean. 太平洋比大西洋大.

Light travels much faster *than* sound. 光比声传播 快得多.

15. 57 that

1) 引导宾语从句、主语从句、表语从句 (that 无词义) (参见 18.9—11)

We all know *that* failure is the mother of success. 我们都知道失败是成功之母.

That Comrade Wang is the most suitable person for the work is agreed. 大家同意, 王同志是做这一工作最合适的人.

The plan is *that* we finish cutting the bananas in three days. 我们计划三天收完香蕉.

2) 引导状语从句表示"以便" (=in order that, so that) (参见 18. 29)

They set off half an hour earlier that they might get there in time. 他们早半小时动身,以便能及时到达那里.

3) 引导定语从句 (相当于关系代词 which, who) (参见 18. 18 中 1) 的 e))

Zoology is a science *that* deals with animals. 动物学是研究动物的科学.

The comrade *that* we saw in the street is an old friend of my father's. 我们在街上见到的那个人是我父亲的一个老朋友.

15. 58 the moment —…就

The moment Chairman Hua appeared on the rostrum, we all stood up and clapped warmly 华主席一出现在主席台上,我们全体起立热烈鼓掌。

The moment the bell rang, all the school children rushed into their classrooms. 铃声一响, 小学生都跑进教室.

15. 59 therefore 所以

The cadres have carried out the Party's policies.

Therefore everything is going on well in the commune. 干部们执行了党的政策,所以公社里一切都进行得很好。

All revolutionary work in our socialist country serves the people, therefore all work is honourable. 在我们社会主义国家,所有革命工作都是为人民服务的,因此,任何工作都是光荣的。

【注】 therefore 比 so 的用法较为正式.

15. 60 though 虽然 (=although)

15. 61 till 直到 (=until)

He did not come back *till* very late. 他很晚才回来.

15. 62 unless 除非, 如果不

Unless we are very careful, we can't do our work well. 如果不非常小心,我们就不能把工作做好.

We run round the campus every morning, unless it rains. 我们天天早上绕着学校跑,除非天下雨才不跑。

15. 63 until 直到

He did underground work for the Party until Shanghai was liberated. 他为党做地下工作,一直到上海解放为止。

He did not stop to rest *until* he finished the work. 他做完了工作才停下来休息.

15. 64 whatever

1) 任何事情,什么都(=anything that)(连接名词性从句) We must do whatever the people want us to do. 人民要我们于什么,我们就干什么.

We should support whatever the enemy opposes and oppose whatever the enemy supports. 凡是敌人 反对的,我们就要拥护;凡是敌人拥护的,我们就要反对.

2) 不管,无论 (=no matter what) (连接状语从句)

Whatever happens, we'll carry on the experiment.
不管怎么样,我们要继续试验.

Every kind of work, whatever it may be, is part of the revolutionary work. 不管什么工作都是革命事业的一部分.

15. 65 when

1) 当, 当…之后

Do not forget to return this book for me when you go to the library. 你去图书馆时,不要忘记替我还这本书.

Don't forget the well-diggers when you drink from this well. 饮水不忘掘井人.

2) 就在那个时候(常用在句子中间)

I was entering the workshop when I heard somebody call after me. 我正走进车间,忽然听见背后有人叫我.

We were picking cotton when it began to rain. 我们正在摘棉花,忽然天下雨了。

15. 66 whenever 不论何时

Whenever he comes to Kwangchow, he visits the National Peasant Movement Institute. 每当他来广州时,总要参观全国农民运动讲习所。

Day and night, wind or rain, they give treatment whenever and wherever needed. 日日夜夜,风里雨里,什么时候需要他们,哪里有病人,他们就去治疗.

15. 67 whereas 然而,另方面(常表示"对比"关系,和 while 相似)

Whereas some people like rice, others like buns. 有人喜欢吃米饭,有人喜欢吃馒头.

15. 68 wherever 不论何处

We go wherever the Party wants us to go. 党要我们到哪里,我们就到哪里.

Wherever you work, you must always serve the people with all your heart. 不论在哪里工作,你都应该全心全意地为人民服务.

15. 69 whether 是否, 不管

I don't remember whether I read this article before. 我记不清过去是否读过这篇文章. (这里的 whether 引导的是宾语从句, 可用 if 来代替.)

Whether we discuss the question has yet to be decided. 我们还沒有决定是否讨论这个问题. (这里的 whether 引导的是主语从句,不可用 if 代替) Whether you can see the moon or not, it is always round. 不管你看见看不见月亮,它总是圆的. (注意 whether... or not 在这里有"不管…是否"的意思,这里 whether 引导的是条件状语从句. if 则不能这样用.)

15. 70 while (常用来表示"对照"关系)

1) 当…时期

Please don't talk so loud while people are working. 别人在工作的时候,请勿大声讲话.

You clean the windows while I sweep the floor. 你 擦窗戶, 我扫地.

2) 然而, 另方面, 虽然

The enemy rots with every passing day, while for us things are getting better daily. 敌人一天天烂下去,我们一天天好起来.

Some read newspapers, while others looked at pictorials. 有的人读报, 有的人看画报.

15. 71 whoever 不管谁…, 谁都 = no matter who

Whoever he may be, he should not talk like that. 不管他是谁,都不应当这样讲. (whoever he may be 是状语从句)

Whoever makes mistakes must correct them. 凡犯 了错误的必须改正 (whoever makes mistakes 是主

语从句)

15.72 yet 然而

He was tired, yet he kept on working. 他疲倦了, 然而他仍然继续工作下去。

Hsiao Tung hurt his leg on the training march, yet he didn't say a word about it. 小董拉练时腿受伤了,而他一声不吭

He has been praised time and again, yet he is never conceited. 他多次受表扬,但从不自满.

三、感叹词概说

15. 73 感叹词概说

- 1) 咸叹词 (interjection) 表示喜怒哀乐等感情的词, 叫 做咸叹词, 如咸叹词 oh 可以表示赞叹或惊讶, alas 表示痛苦等。

I'm sorry. I forgot all about it. 对不起, 我全忘了

- —Oh, it's nothing. 啊, 沒什么.
- Is Comrade Wang a Party member? 王同志是党员吗?
- -Why, of course. 唔, 当然是.
- 3) 感叹词的位置 感叹词常常放在句首,后用逗号; 感情较强时可用惊叹号, 感叹词有时也放在句中, 但这样的情况较少,

四、常用感叹词

15.74 常用的感叹词

- 1) oh [ou] 表示惊奇、恐惧、痛苦、高兴等。
- 2) O 同上.
- 3) ah [aː] 表示惊奇、高兴、同意等.
- 4) well 表示惊奇、满意、犹疑、松一口气、开始新话题等。
- 5) oh dear, dear, (my) goodness, (good) gracious 妇女常用来表示惊异等感情.
- 6) O Lord, good Lord, good heavens 男人常用来表示惊异等感情.
- 7) hallo [ha'lou] 常被用来招呼人,相当于汉语的"喂!"或"你好!"
 - 8) why 表示惊奇等.
 - 9) alas [ə'laːs] 表示痛苦、焦急等。
 - 10) aha [aː'haː] 表示得意、高兴等.
 - 11) pshaw [pʃoː] [ʃoː] 表示鄙视.
 - 12) bravo ['braz'vou] 用于欢呼,相当于"好!"
 - 13) hurrah [hu'ra:] 用于欢呼.
 - 14) hush [hʌʃ] 用于要求肃静.
 - 15) nonsense ['nonsəns] 相当于汉语的"胡说"。
 - 16) come, come 表示劝说、鼓励等.
 - 17) now。用来表示请求、惊异或换换口气·
 - 18) fie [fai] 表示轻蔑.
 - 19) eh [ei] 表示惊讶、怀疑、不客气等。
 - [注] 感叹词用法举例见 20.2.

第十六章 句子概说

一、句子的特征

- **16.1 特征** 英语里的句子 (sentence) 有下列几个特征:
- 1) 必须具有比较完整的意思、一定的语法结构和一定的语调。
 - 2) 句子开头第一个字母必须大写,
- 3) 句子末尾必须有句号"·"(不可用汉语句号"。") 或问号"?"或惊叹号"!".
 - 4) 旬子和句子之间不可用逗号 (与汉语不同). 如:
 - I am a worker. I go to the "July 21" Workers' College three times a week. I study Marxism, electricity and English there. 我是一个工人,每周上三次"七・二一"工人大学,学习马克思主义、电学和英语。

二、句子的种类和类型

- **16.2** 种类 按照句子的用途来分,英语的句子有下列四种:
- 1) 陈述句 (declarative sentence) 用来陈述一项事实. 如:

Chairman Mao Tsetung was the greatest Marxist of the contemporary era. 毛泽东主席是当代最伟大的马克思主义者。

He works hard. 他努力工作。

Tachai is a red banner in agriculture. 大寨是农业 战线的一面红旗,

"The Hard-Boned Sixth Company" is a model company. "硬骨头六连" 是个模范连

He was not a teacher before liberation. 他解放前不是教员.

2) 疑问句 (interrogative sentence) 用来提出问题. 如: What is work? Work is struggle. 什么叫工作,工作就是斗爭.

Does he work hard? 他工作努力吗?

Who works the hardest? 谁工作最努力?

What is his work like? 他是怎样工作的?(他工作 得如何?)

He works hard, doesn't he? 他工作努力,是不是?

Is he a teacher or a student? 他是教师还是学生?

3) 新使句 (imperative sentence) 用来发出请求、命令等、如:

Stand up. 起立.

Be quiet. 请安静.

Let's begin. 我们开始吧.

Don't open the door. 不要开门.

Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today,

不要把今天能做的事拖到明天.

4) 威叹句 (exclamatory sentence) 用来表示强烈的威情. 如:

How hard he works! 他工作得多努力啊!
What a fine worker he is! 他是个多么优秀的工人啊!
How well this girl sings! 这个女孩唱得多好啊!

- **16.** 3 **类型** 按照句子的结构来分, 英语的句子有下列 **三种**类型:
- 1) 简单句 (simple sentence) 简单句只有一个主语 (或幷列主语) 和一个谓语动词 (或幷列谓语动词) 如:
 - I read A Romance of the Three Kingdoms many years ago. 我好多年以前读过《三国演义》.(含有一个主语和一个谓语动词)
 - The Party and government show great concern for the welfare of the workers. 党和政府非常关怀工人的福利. (含有一个并列主语和一个谓语动词)
 - He likes drawing and often draws pictures for the wall-newspaper. 他喜欢绘画,经常为墙报绘画. (含有一个主语和一个并列谓语动词)
 - We work during the day and go to technical training class at night. 我们白天工作,晚上到技术训练 班学习. (含有一个主语和一个幷列谓语动词)
- 2) 幷列句 (compound sentence) 并列句由等立连词或分号";"把两个或两个以上的简单句连在一起构成。如: We help them and they help us. 我们帮他们,他们

帮我们.

Again everybody urged Dr. Bethune to leave, but he insisted on going on with the operation. 大家再次催白求恩大夫离开,但他坚持继续做手术.

It is late, so we must hurry. 天色不早了, 我们得 赶快.

The future is bright; the road is tortuous. 前途是 光明的, 道路是曲折的.

3) 复合句 (complex sentence) 复合句中含有一个或一个以上的从句. 如:

He said that he would go to the Exhibition of Chinese Traditional Paintings. 他说他要去看中国国画展览。

The foreign visitors took a lot of pictures when they were at the Great Wall. 外宾在长城拍了许多照片。

What is the name of the film that you saw yesterday? 你昨天看的那个电影叫什么名字?

[注] 以上三种类型是句子的基本类型,由这三种类型**还可以构成类型较** 复杂的句子,如:

He came, but he did not say that he had been ill. 他来了, 但并没有说他病过的事. (简单句+复合句)

We know very well that there are difficulties, but none of them are insurmountable. 我们知道得很清楚我们有困难, 但这些困难都不是不可克服的. (复合句+简单句)

She said she would work as a cook, and I told her that I would learn to be a carpenter. 她说她要当炊事员,我告诉她我要学术工. (复合句+复合句)

If there's anything I can do for you, just let me know. 假如我能为你干些什么,请告诉我。(复合句的从句中含有从句)

If we want to keep fit, we must always remember that pre-

vention is better than cure. 如果我们要保持身体健康,我们必须记住,预防重于治疗。(复合句的主句中含有从句)

He was convinced that the peasants' armed struggle could succeed only when it was led by the Communist Party. 他相信农民武装斗争只有在共产党的领导下才能取得成功.(复合句的从句中含有从句)

Please tell the head of the revolutionary committee of the commune that I'm very grateful to the commune members for arranging this visit and for the warm welcome I have received here and that when I go back to my country I will certainly tell my people all about my visit here. 请告诉公社革委会的领导人,我非常感谢社员为我安排这次访问,感谢他们对我的热情欢迎;还请告诉他,在我回国之后,我一定把我在这里见到的一切转告我国人民、(复合句有两个从句,而这两个从句本身又都是复合句)

三、句子的成分

(一) 概说

- **16.4 句子的成分** (members of the sentence) 关于句子的成分, 应注意下面几点:
- 1) 一个句子的各个组成部分,叫做句子的成分. 句子的成分有主语、谓语动词、表语、宾语、定语和状语.
- 2) 实词一般都能作句子成分, 实词有名词、代词、形容词、数词、动词和副词, 虚词在句子中只起联系等作用, 不算作句子成分, 虚词有冠词、介词、连词和感叹词,
- 3) 词类与句子成分不同. 词类指弧立的单词的分类,而句子成分则指单词或一组单词在句中的功用. (参见 1.3 和 1.4)

(二) 主语

16.5 主语 (subject) 是一个句子所叙说的主体. 主

286

语的位置一般在句首, 英语主语一般不省略, 可担任主语的有:

1) 名词

Prevention is better than cure. 预防比治疗好.
Workers build factories and houses. 工人建筑工厂和房屋。

2) 代词

He works at a commune hospital. 他在一所公社医院里工作.

This is a picture of the Wuhan Yangtze River Bridge. 这是一张武汉长江大桥的照片.

Who live in the new houses? 谁住在新房子里? Nobody knows who took the key. 沒有人知道谁拿了钥匙.

3) 数词

Three plus five equals eight. 三加五等于八。

My brother gave me two books. The first was a novel. 我哥哥给了我两本书. 第一本是一部小说.

4) 动词不定式

To liberate Taiwan is our sacred duty. 解放台湾是 我们神圣的责任.

- It is the lofty duty of every citizen to defend the motherland and resist aggression. 保卫祖国, 抵抗侵略是每一个公民的崇高职责。
- It is important for us to study Chairman Mao's philosophical works. 学习毛主席的哲学著作对我

们是重要的. (主语是动词不定式复合结构) [注] 关于动词不定式作主语,见 13.3 的 1)

5) 动名词

Skating is good exercise. 溜冰是很好的运动.

Looking up all these words in the dictionary took him a lot of time. 从词典里查这些词费了他许多时间.

Constant dripping wears away a stone. 滴水穿石.

6) 名词化的形容词或分词 the rich 富人, the poor 穷人, the wounded 伤员, the dying 临死的人, the deceased 死者

7) 短语

How to do it well is an important question. 如何把这件事做好是一个重要问题.

8) 从句

What he said is quite true 他讲得很正确.

That the sun rises in the east is common knowledge. 太阳从东方升起这是普通常识.

【注】 关于并列主语,见 16. 3 的 1).关于形式主语和真实主语,见 21. 4. 关于逻辑主语,见 16. 14, 13. 7 和 13. 17.

(三) 谓语动词

16. 6 谓语动词 (predicate verb) 说明主语的动作或 状态的句子成分,叫做谓语动词,谓语动词的位置一般在主 语之后.

谓语动词由各种时态的动词表示。如; Fire burns. 火会燃烧。 The people *appear* healthy and well fed. 人民看起来健康,吃得好.

The Paris Commune was of profound international significance. 巴黎公社有深远的国际意义.

He is working on the farm now. 他现在在农场干活. (is working 是动词短语)

I shall go to see him tomorrow. 我明天要去看他。 (shall go 也是动词短语)

The English edition of the novel has been published in Peking. 这本小说的英文本已在北京发行。

助动词或情态动词加动词也构成谓语动词,如:

She can swim very fast. 她游泳游得很快.

I *must ask* her to teach me to swim. 我一定得 请她教我游泳

I'm going to see a friend of my father's tomorrow. 我明天去看我父亲的一个朋友

Man will triumph over nature. 人定胜天.

(四) 表语

- 16.7 表语 (predicative) 是用来说明主语的身份、特征和状态的,它的位置在连系动词 (to be, to become, to appear, to look, to seem 等) 之后. 可用作表语的有;
 - 1) 名词

Africa is a big continent. 非洲是个大洲.

Air is matter. 空气是物质.

My father became a Party member during the Long March. 我父亲长征时入党.

2) 代词

Oh, it's you! 啊, 是你呀!

It was they who repaired the chairs. 椅子是他们修的.

3) 形容词和分词

All the nationalities in our country are equal. 我国各民族一律平等.

Auntie Chang feels much better today. 张大妈今天好多了.

The match became very exciting. 比赛变得很紧张.

Team leader Chang was satisfied with Hsiao Li's work. 生产队张队长对小李的工作感到满意.

4) 数词

Three times five is fifteen. 三乘五等于十五. She was the third to arrive. 她是第三个到的,

5) 动词不定式和动名词

Our chief method is to learn warfare through warfare. 从战争中学习战争——这是我们的主要方法。

Their job is *cultivating* rice seedlings. 他们的工作 是育稻秧.

6) 介词短语

The children are in the playground. 孩子们在操场上玩.

The patient is out of danger. 病人脫险了.

The house is of brick and mud. 这间房子是用砖头和泥盖的。

7) 副词

The sun is up. 太阳升起来了.

Is your father *in*? 你父亲在家吗?—No, he's *out*.——他不在家.

I must be off now. 现在我得走了。

8) 从旬

My idea is *that we water the vegetables* first. **我的** 想法是我们先浇菜.

(五) 宾语

16. 8 宾语 (object) 表示动作的对象,是动作的承受者,英语的及物动词须有宾语,宾语一般放在及物动词之后,如:

We must *criticize* the *bourgeoisie*. 要批判资产阶级。 (the bourgeoisie 是及物动词 criticize 的宾语)

Old workers *encourage* young *workers* to carry on the tradition of hard struggle. 老工人鼓励青年工人继承艰苦奋斗的传统. (workers 是及物动词 encourage 的宾语)

Pass me the ink, please. 请把墨水递给我 (me 和 ink 是及物动词 pass 的宾语)

Make hay while the sun shines. 趁热打铁. (hay 是 及物动词 make 的宾语)

〔注一〕 英语介词后面也要有宾语. 如:

In our school about three-fourths of the students are from the north. 我们学校四分之三的学生来自北方.

[注二] 英语里某些形容词如 worth (值得), able (能够), sure (肯定), careful (小心) 等也可以有宾语 (参看 13. 3 的 3)). 如:

This book is worth reading. 这本书值得读.

Our factory is able to produce rayon, vinylon and other chemical fibres. 我们厂能生产人造丝. 维尼伦和其它化学纤维.

Are you sure that he will come? 你肯定他会来吗?

She is always careful what she does. 她做什么事总是很细心.

16.9 什么可以用作宾语 可以用作宾语的有:

1) 名词

He takes a cold bath every morning. 他每天早晨 洗冷水澡.

Deputy secretary Hsu often visits the workers' families in his spare time. 许副书记经常利用业余时间访问工人家庭.

2) 代词宾格

All of us like him. 我们都喜欢他。

3) 数词

Give me four. 给我四个,

4) 动词不定式

Every one of us likes to go to the circus. 我们都喜欢看马戏.

5) 动名词

My father began working for a capitalist at the age of eleven. 我父亲十一岁就开始为资本家干活.

Do you mind my *opening* the window? 我开窗户 你在意吗?

Do you like playing football? 你喜欢踢足球吗?

6) 名词化的形容词或分词

Heal the wounded, rescue the dying, practise revolutionary humanitarianism. 救死扶伤,实行革命的人道主义.

7) 短语

He did not know what to say. 他不知道说什么好.

Hsiao Ying learnt how to make cloth shoes from Aunt Li. 小英跟李大婶学做布鞋.

8) 从句

- I think he is right. 我想他是对的.
- 1 wonder if you'd like to visit the coal mine with us. 你要跟我们一道去参观煤矿吗?

直接宾语和间接宾语

16. 10 直接宾语和间接宾语 有些及物动词,如 give (给), show (给…看), pass (递), send (遗送), bring (带来)等,可以有两个宾语. 这种动词所要求的两个宾语, 往往一个指物,一个指人. 指物的叫直接宾语 (direct object), 指人的叫间接宾语 (indirect object). 间接宾语一般放在直接宾语之前. 如:

He gave me some pictures of Tachai. 他给我一些 (间接宾语) (直接宾语)

大寨的照片.

Lend me your pen-knife, please. 请你把铅笔刀借给 (间接宾语) (直接宾语)

我.

Excuse me, please. Could you tell me the way to the post office? 对不起,请问到邮局怎么走?

Uncle Chen taught Hsiao Yang how to grow rice. 陈 大爷教小杨种水稻

Can you tell me when the next train leaves? 请问下

班火车什么时候开?

16. 11 如果直接宾语是人称代词 就须在间接宾语之前加介词 to,构成介词短语,并把这个短语放在直接宾语之后,如:

Do you see the hammer there? Hand it to me, please. 那儿的那把锤子你瞧见沒有? 请递给我.

I've got three tickets here. Please give them to Comrade Li. 我这儿有三张票,请你交给李同志.

16. 12 强调间接宾语 下面的句子把作为直接宾语的名词放在前面, 把带 to 的间接宾语放在后面, 这是为了强调间接宾语, 如:

Give my best regards to your parents. 请代我问候 你父母亲. (写信用语)

The shop-assistant took vegetables to the workers' homes. 售货员把蔬菜送到工人的家里.

The commune members sold their surplus grain to the state. 社员把余粮卖给国家.

同源宾语

16. 13 同源宾语 (cognate object) 有些不及物动词如 live (生活), die (死), sleep (睡), smile (微笑), dream (梦), fight (战斗), laugh (笑) 等后面可有一个与它意义相同的宾语. 这样的宾语叫做同源宾语. 如:

Tung Chung-jui, a fine member of the Chinese Communist Party, died a martyr's death. 中国共产党的优秀党员董存瑞壮烈牺牲.

The former poor peasants of the village lived a mis-

erable *life* before liberation. 这村子的贫农解放前过着悲惨的生活.

此外还有 to sleep a sleep (睡觉), to dream a dream (做梦), to fight a fight (打仗) 等.

[注] 同源宾语也包括 to run a race (赛跑), to strike a blow (给以一 击) 等。又同源宾语一般带有修饰语. 如: to sleep a good sleep (睡 个好觉), to die a sudden death (突然死去).

复合宾语

16. 14 复合宾语 (complex object) 英语有些及物动词,除了要有一个直接宾语之外,还要加上宾语补足语 (object complement),句子的意义才算完整.宾语和宾语补足语一起构成复合宾语.由于复合宾语中的宾语和它的补足语在逻辑上有主语和谓语的关系,所以这样的宾语也叫做逻辑主语,它的补足语也叫做逻辑谓语.如:

Call me Lao Wang. 叫我老王吧.

The landlord made *Kao Yu-pao get up* before dawn every day. 地主强迫高玉宝每天天不亮就起来.

- **16.** 15 **宾语补足语表示法** 在复合宾语中,能作宾语 补足语的有名词和形容词,以及其他某些相当于名词和形容 词的词语 现将复合宾语的各种形式举例说明如下:
 - 1) 名词或代词宾格+名词

Chairman Mao helped to dig a well. From then on the villagers called it "the Red Well." 毛主席帮助挖了一口井,从此以后,老乡们叫它为"红井".

We elected him Party secretary. 我们选他为党支部 书记. They named the baby Wei Tung. 他们给婴儿取名卫东.

2) 名词或代词宾格+形容词

I always find her happy and gay. 我发现她总是那样高兴而愉快.

The worker painted *the tractor red*. 工人把拖拉机 漆成红色.

Be sure to get *everything ready* by seven, as the car will leave at ten past seven. 一定要在七点以前把东西准备好,因为汽车在七点十分开·

3) 名词或代词宾格+介词短语

The next morning I found him at his machine again. 第二天早上我发现他又在机器旁工作了.

People praised Wang Chin-hsi as an "Iron Man". 人 们称赞王进喜为"铁人"。

4) 名词或代词宾格+动词不定式

We asked the teacher to explain the difficult sentences again. 我们请教员把难句再解释一遍

Party Secretary Wang helped *Hsiao Li see his error*. 王支书帮助小李认识错误.

- [注] let. make, see, hear 等动词的复合宾语中,如有动词不定式,须 省去不定式记号 "to". (参看 13.4)
 - 5) 名词或代词宾格+分词

I saw a lot of *peasants working* in the fields. 我看见许多农民在地里干活.

I heard her singing folk songs. 我听见她唱民歌. He had his ankle sprained while playing football. 他 踢足球时把脚踝扭伤.

This tape-recorder does not work. I'll get it repaired in town. 这台录音机坏了, 我要送到城里去修.

(六) 定语

- 16. 16 定语 (attribute) 修饰名词或代词的词、短语或从句,称为定语 单词作定语时通常放在它所修饰的名词之前.如果它所修饰的名词带有冠词,就放在冠词和名词之间 短语和从句作定语时则放在它所修饰的名词之后.
 - 16.17 什么可以用作定语 用作定语的有:
 - 1) 形容词

This is a good novel. 这是本好小说.

Peking is well known for its glorious revolutionary tradition in modern Chinese history. 北京由于它在中国现代历史上光荣的革命传统而著名。

2) 分词和分词短语

There is some exciting news in today's paper. 今 天报上有令人兴奋的消息.

The carpenter is mending the broken sofa. 木工在 修破沙发.

The retired worker often tells the Young Pioneers revolutionary stories. 这位退休老工人经常给少先队员讲革命故事。

The comrade talking with our monitor is our new physics teacher. 和班长谈话的那位同志是我们的、新物理老师。

The brigade bought a new tractor made in Shen-

yang. 大队买了一台沈阳造的拖拉机,

3) 代词

My brother is a PLA man. 我哥哥是个解放军战士。

Have you any books about English literature? 你有关于英国文学的书吗?

4) 数词

We unite with the people all over the world in our struggle against the *two* superpowers. 我们联合全世界的人民反对两个超级大国.

Please copy out the sixth paragraph. 请抄写第六段.

5) 名词所有格

Iron Man Wang's name was Wang Chin-hsi. 王铁 人的真名是王进喜。

Betty's father is a poor black worker. 贝蒂的父亲是个穷苦的黑人工人.

He asked for two months' leave. 他请了两个月的假.

6) 名词

Hsiao Chang's parents are both *Party* members. 小 常的双亲都是党员.

Lu Hsun's works are of world significance. 鲁迅的, 著作具有世界意义.

What's the weather forecast for tomorrow? 明天天 气预报怎样?

7) 动词不定式 (放在被修饰的名词之后)

Have you anything to say on this question? 关于 这个问题你有什么要说的吗?

8) 介词短语(放在被修饰的名词之后)

The Tsunyi Conference was an important meeting in the history of the Chinese Communist Party. 遵义会议是中国共产党历史上一次重要的会议。

I have lost the key to the door. 我把房门的钥匙丢了.

The situation *in Africa* is most encouraging. 非洲形势十分令人鼓舞.

9) 动名词

Will you tell us your teaching plan for next week? 你给我们谈谈你下周的教学计划好吗?

10) 副词(放在被修饰的名词之后)

They live in the room above. 他们住在楼上房间里. Do you see the big dam there? 你看见那儿的大坝吗?

11) 从句(放在被修饰的名词之后)

The old worker who is coming to speak to us tomorrow took part in the February 7th General Strike. 明天来给我们讲话的老工人参加过二·七大罢工. We shall never forget the day when Peking was liberated. 我们将永远不会忘记北京解放的那一天.

- **16.** 18 **定语的位置** 关于定语的位置在 **16.** 16 已叙述过,这里需要指出的是单词作定语时在下列情况下须放在它所修饰的词的后面。
- 1) 定语修饰 some, any, every, no 等所构成的复合不 定代词时 如:

Is there anything important in today's paper? 今天

报上有什么重要的消息吗?

There is nothing wrong with the sentence. 这个句子沒有什么不对的地方.

- 2) 在下面一些特殊情况下,形容词须放在被修饰的名词之后. 如:
 - All the commune members, young and old, went out to harvest the crops. 全体老少社员都出去收割庄稼.
 - It is the only solution possible. 这是唯一可能的解决方法.
 - We had the greatest difficulty *imaginable* in 1960, nevertheless we fulfilled our plan ahead of time. 一九六〇年我们遇到了极大的困难, 但是我们仍然提前完成了计划. (参见 6.17 的 [注二])
 - I have never seen a film more interesting and instructive. 我从未看过这样有趣而又富于教育意义的影片,
- 3) 用作定语的副词 (如 here, there 等) 须放在名词之后. 如:

The book here is very interesting. 这儿的这本书很有趣味.

The factory *there* is run by our school. 那里的工厂是我们学校办的.

16. 19 同位语 appositive 把一个名词(或代词)或相当于名词的短语或从句放在另一名词(或代词)之后,用以说明前者的性质或情况,这样的名词(或代词)叫做同位语。同位语也可以说是一种定语,如:

my friend *Smith* 我的朋友史密斯we *Chinese* 我们中国人we *all*, us *all* 我们全体
[注] 关于从句作同位语, 例见 18. 23.

(七) 状语

- 16. 20 状语 (adverbial) 修饰动词、形容词、副词以及全旬的句子成分,叫做状语.
- 16.21 状语的功用 状语说明地点、时间、原因、目的、结果、条件、让步、方向、程度、方式、伴随情况等.如:

He has gone to the country. 他到乡下去了 (地点) In China today factory workers receive free medical care. 今天在中国,工厂工人享受公费治疗. (地点,时间)

She will not come today, because she has to attend a meeting. 因为要开会,所以她今天不能来. (原因) To make use of atomic energy we must first know the structure of the atom. 为了利用原子能,我们必须先了解原子的构造. (目的)

He worked so hard that he caught up with the others very quickly. 他工作得很努力, 很快就赶上别人了.(结果)

- I quite agree with you. 我十分同意你的意见. (程度)
- She went to work yesterday though she had a headache. 她昨天尽管头痛,仍去上班了(让步)

He came running. 他跑来了. (方式)

16. 22 **状语表示法** 用作状语的有副词或相当于副词的其他词类、短语和从句. 如:

1) 副词

That young girl plays the accordion wonderfully. 那个年青的姑娘手风琴拉得好极了.

Come again. 再来呀.

Suddenly it began to rain. 天突然下雨了。

He laughs best who laughs last. 谁笑得最后, 谁笑得最好。

2) 介词短语

Marx and Engels wrote the Communist Manifesto in 1848. 马克思和恩格斯于一八四八年合写《共产党宣言》.

According to the plan we must finish the work tomorrow. 根据计划我们必须在明天完成这项工作.

3) 分词和分词短语

He sat there smoking. 他坐在那里吸烟.

Not knowing what to do, he decided to ask the teacher for advice. 他不知道怎么办好, 就去问老师.

4) 动词不定式

We all rushed forward to shake hands with the advanced worker. 我们都冲向前去和这位先进工作者握手.

The other day I went to see a friend of mine in town. 那天我进城看一位朋友。

To learn a foreign language well we must have a good method. 要学好外语必须有好方法。

5) 名词

Wait a moment. 等一下, Come this way, please. 请这边走,

6) 从旬

A new life began for Peking in January 1949 when the old city was liberated. 一九四九年一月北京解放后,这个古老的城市开始了新的生活。

We can't do the work well unless the masses are mobilized. 群众不发动起来,我们的工作就做不好.

- 16.23 **状语的位置** 英语中状语的位置问题比较复杂, 下面只谈一些最一般的情况
 - 1) 修饰动词的状语有三个位置
- a) 在句子基本结构 (参见 17.1) 之后 这是状语最 通常的位置. 如:

Put prevention first. 预防为主.

I read this number of *China Reconstructs yesterday*. 我昨天读了这期《中国建设》.

The pigs are growing fast under Aunt Chang's care. 在张大婶的照顾下猪长得很快.

但如宾语较长, 状语亦可放在宾语之前. 如!

He took from his pocket a red scarf and gave it to his little daughter. 他从口袋里拿出一条红领巾,给了他的小女儿,

b) 在句子基本结构之前 (往往为了强调) 如i

In the final analysis, national struggle is a matter of

class struggle. 民族斗爭,说到底,是一个阶级斗爭问题.

Day and night, frontier guards guard our motherland's frontiers. 边防战士日日夜夜守卫着祖国的边疆.

Usually I read the newspapers in the morning, but yesterday I read them in the evening. 我通常在早上读报,但是昨天我是晚上读的.

c) 在动词 to be 或助动词、情态动词之后,其它动词之前。属于这类的有表示不确定时间的状语、表示程度的状语以及修饰全句的状语等。如: often (往往), still (仍然), never (从不,决不), also (也), always (总是,经常), already (已经), usually (通常), even (甚至), ever (曾经), quite (十分), almost (几乎), certainly (一定) 等等.

Our Party group leader always helps others. 我们 党小组长经常帮助别人.

The Party branch *often* educates Party members on the Party's basic line. 党支部经常用党的基本路线教育党员.

I have already had my supper. 我已经吃过晚饭了. Is the shop still open? 商店还开着门吗?

I shall never forget that day. 我永远不会忘记那一天。 [注] 句中同时有时间状语和地点状语时,地点状语一般须放在时间状语之前。如:

The meeting will be held in the classroom tomorrow afternoon. 会议将于明天下午在教室里举行.

We had a celebration in the Working People's Palace of Culture on May Day. 我们五•一节在劳动人民文化宫举行游园活动。

2) 修饰形容词和副词的状语一般放在被修饰词之前。如: She is a very good saleswoman. 她是一个很好的售 货员,

It is raining very hard. 雨下得很大.

〔注〕 注意副词 enough 修饰形容词和副词时, 须放在形容词和副词之后。如:

Are you warm enough? 你够暖和吗? I don't know him well enough. 我对他还不够了解。

第十七章 简单句

一、简单句的基本句型

- 17. 1 英语简单句由于所用的主要动词不同 (即连系动词、不及物动词和及物动词三种),就产生了不同的句子类型,归纳起来有下列五大类:
 - 1) 主语+连系动词+表语

The east is red. 东方红.

Wang's father is a docker. 王的父亲是码头工人.

My uncle became a miner in 1938. 我伯父一九三 八年成为矿工。

Please keep quiet! 请安靜!

The commune members are in the fields. 社员在地里干活.

2) 主语+不及物动词

The sun rises. 太阳升,

This machine works well. 这个机器运转得很好.

Think more. 多思.

Why does the wind blow? 为什么会刮风?

The Opium War broke out in 1839. 鸦片战爭于→ 八三九年爆发.

3) 主语+及物动词+宾语

We often have dumplings. 我们常吃饺子.

Have you had lunch yet? 你吃过午饭吗?

We study Marxism seriously. 我们认真学习马克思 主义·

They decided to hold a class meeting. 他们决定开个班会。

Stop making a noise! 別闹了!

4) 主语+及物动词+间接宾语+直接宾语

My father bought me a novel. 我父亲给我买了一本小说。

The worker told them a revolutionary story. 这位工人给他们讲了一个革命故事.

Pass me the salt, please. 请把盐递给我.

Uncle Li taught me how to play the piano. 李伯伯教我弹钢琴.

5) 主语+及物动词 +宾语+补语

Chairman Mao called on us to learn from Tachai. 毛主席号召我们向大寨学习.

I saw her carry manure to the fields. 我看见她往 地里送肥.

We elected Lao Li our group leader. 我们选老李当小组长.

The workers keep their shop clean and tidy. 工人 把车间打扫整洁.

I had my watch mended. 我的表修过了。

二、陈述句

17. 2 陈述句 (declarative sentence) 用来叙述一项事实 (包括肯定和否定). 陈述句句末用句号"·", 全句用降调.

The Nanchang Uprising took place on August 1, 1927. 南昌起义发生于一九二七年八月一日.

I was not in Peking last year. 去年我不在北京.

【注】 I am 的简略式是 I'm.

You are 的简略式是 You're. It is 的简略式是 It's.

He is 的简略式是 He's. We are 的简略式是 We're.

She is 的简略式是 She's. They are 的简略式是 They're.

上述简略式用于口语中,但不可用于肯定简略答语中.

17. 3 否定结构 (一) 如果句子的谓语动词为 to be, to have, 或者谓语动词有助动词、情态动词时, 在它们的后面加 not, 即构成否定结构. 如:

I am not a teacher. I am a student. 我不是教师. 我是学员.

They haven't any books on this subject. 他们沒有 这方面题材的书.

He's not coming. 他不来了.

I haven't had my supper yet. 我还沒有吃晚饭.

It won't do. 那个不行,

We *mustn't* forget the sufferings of the labouring people in the past. 我们不可忘记劳动人民过去受的苦难.

You needn't explain this sentence; it's easy. 你不 必解释这个句子,这个句子不难. We cannot live without air. 沒有空气我们就活不了。 It couldn't be lost. 它不会丢失的.

They might not come. 他们也许不来.

There is no unemployment or inflation in China. 中国沒有失业和通货膨胀.

There were *not* any trees here five years ago. 五年 前这里沒有树.

[注] 在以动词 to have (所有) 作谓语动词的否定句中, 如用 not, 直接 宾语之前常用 any, many, much 等词; 如用 no, 便不用 any, many, much 等词. 如:

I have not any sisters. 我没有姐妹.

She has not many French books. 她没有多少法语书.

He has no brothers. 他没有兄弟.

17. 4 否定结构 (二) 如果句子的谓语动词是 to do (即行为动词),而其中又沒有情态动词或助动词时,须在谓语动词之前加 do not (第三人称单数现在式是 does not,各人称的过去式是 did not) 来构成否定结构.如:

I don't know. 我不知道.

It does not fit me. 它不合我的身.

You don't look well today. 你今天气色不好,

I didn't sleep enough last night. 我昨晚睡得不够.

[注] 注意 have 不作"有"讲而作为行为动词时,它的现在一般时的否定形式是 do not have (第三人称单数是 does not have),不是have (has) not;它的过去一般时的否定形式是 did not have,不是had not. (参看 8.7 的 [注一]) 如:

I don't have supper at six. 我不是在六点吃晚饭. (have 在这里作"吃"讲.)

三、疑问句

(一) 概说

17.5 概说 用来提出疑问的句子叫做疑问句 (interrogative sentence). 疑问句末尾须用问号 "?". 疑问句有四类: 一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句和反意疑问句.

(二) 一般疑问句

- 17.6 一般疑问句 (general question) 用 yes 或 no 来 回答的疑问句,叫做一般疑问句.一般疑问句句首第一个词一般读得较重,声调也最高,然后依次下降,句末声调上升.
- **17.** 7 一般疑问句的谓语动词的位置 共有三种情况,现分别举例说明如下:
- 1) 一般疑问句的谓语动词 to be, to have, 放在主语之前.

Are you a worker? 你是工人吗?
Was he here yesterday? 他昨天在这里吗?
Have you any pencils? 你有铅笔吗?
Has she any teaching experience? 她有教学经验吗?

2) 句中的助动词或情态动词放在主语之前:

Are you reading today's paper? 你在读今天的报纸吗?

Is she going with you? 她和你一起去吗? Shall we go now? 我们现在就走吗? Will you join us? 你愿意加入我们吗?

【注】 注意 have 不作"有"讲而作为行为动词时,它的各种疑问句形式

和其他行为动词的各种疑问句形式完全一样.(参看8.7的[注一])如: Do you have supper at six? 你是六点吃晚饭吗?(一般疑问句) When do you have supper?你什么时候吃晚饭?(特殊疑问句) You have supper at six, don't you? 你六点吃晚饭,不是吗?(反意疑问句)

Can he swim across the Yangtze River? 他能游过 长江吗?

May I come in? 我可以进来吗?

Must we hand in the exercise today? 我们今天一定要交练习吗?

Have you read the essay? 你读过这篇小品文吗? Has the time been changed? 时间改了吗? (这里有has 和 been 两个助动词,只移第一个助动词至主语之前.)

3) 助动词 do 放在主语之前 (第三人称单数现在一般时用 does):

Do you know German? 你懂德语吗?

Does he (she) know German? 他 (她) 懂德语吗?

17.8 一般疑问句的简略答语 回答一般疑问句时不必用完全句,通常用简略答语.简略答语的结构是: Yes(no)+主语+be, have 或助动词或情态动词 (not),或 Yes (no)+主语+助动词 do (not). Yes 和 no 之后须用逗号 ",",简略答语的末尾用句号.如:

一般疑问句

Are you a worker? 你是工人吗?

简略答语

Yes, I am.

是,我是工人。

No, I am not.

不,我不是工人,

Is she coming? 她来吗?

Will you join us? 你愿意加入我们 吗?

Do you know German? 你懂德文吗? Must you go today? 你今天必须走吗? Yes, she is. 是, 她来. No, she isn't. 不, 她 不来.

Yes, I will. 是,我愿意. No, I won't. 不,我不 愿意.

Yes, I do. 是, 我懂. No, I don't. 不,我不懂. Yes, I must. 是, 我必须走.

No, I needn't. 不,我不必走.

[注] 关于简略答语的各个时态形式, 详见本书第八章各个时态的四种简单句结构, 关于助动词否定形式的简略式, 见 10.1 的 2). 关于情态动词否定形式的简略式, 见 11.3. 关于 I'm 等不能用于肯定的简略答语中, 详见 17.2 的[注]. 但 I'm 等可用在否定的简略答语中, 如:
No, I'm not (= I am not); No, he's not (= he is not 或he isn't).

17.9 一般疑问句的否定结构 把副词 not 放在一般疑问句的主语之后,即构成一般疑问句的否定结构. 但如用 not 的简略式 -n't,则须将 -n't 和一般疑问句句首的 be, have,助动词或情态动词写在一起. 在实际运用中,一般都用简略式. 如:

Is he not a worker?

Isn't he a worker?

Will he not come?

Won't he come?

Have you not any brothers?

Haven't you any brothers?

Worker & American Americ

Can he not do it? Can't he do it?

英语一般疑问句否定结构的答语是肯定还是否定,全由 答语的肯定或否定来决定. 如果答语是肯定的, 即须用 yes+ 肯定结构; 如果答语是否定的, 即须用 no+否定结构. 这与 汉语不同, 试比较:

英: Is he not a worker?

汉: 他不是工人吗? 英: Yes, he is. No, he is not.

是的,他不是工人。

英: Haven't you any brothers?

汉: 你沒有弟兄吗? 英: Yes, I have one. No, I haven't any.

汉: 不,我有一个. 是的,我沒有。

英: Don't you know English?

汉: 你不懂英语吗? 英: Yes, I do. No, I don't. 是的,我不懂.

[注] 副词 not 的简略式 -n't 在其他疑问句中, 也必须和 be, have, 助 动词或情态动词写在一起. 如:

Why didn't you go? 你为什么没有去? (特殊疑问句) It's a good picture, isn't it? 这是一张好画, 不是吗? (反意疑 问句)

(三) 特殊疑问句

17. 10 特殊疑问句 (special question) 就句中某一部分 提问的疑问句, 叫做特殊疑问句. 特殊疑问句句首用疑问词。 旬末声调下降,它与一般疑问句的区别在于:特殊疑问句不 可用 yes 或 no 来回答,一般疑问句则用 yes 或 no 来回答.

17. 11 疑问词

1) 疑问代词

who i推。

(作主语和表语)

whom 谁

(作宾语)

whose 谁的

(作主语、表语、宾语和定语)

which 哪个,哪些 (作主语、表语、宾语和定语)

what 什么

(作主语、表语、宾语和定语)

【注】 疑问代词都属于第三人称,一般为单数,有时也代表复数.what, whose, which 作定语时,须放在它们所修饰的名词之前。

2) 疑问副词 (用作状语)

when 何时

where .何地

why 为什么?

how 如何

how much 多少 (how 修饰形容词 much)

how many 多少 (how 修饰形容词 many)

how long 多久

(how 修饰副词 long)

how far 多远

(how 修饰形容词和副词 far)

how big 多大

(how 修饰形容词 big)

【注】 how 修饰形容词或副词时,必须放在形容词或副词之前。

17.12 特殊疑问句的两种结构

- 1) 第一种结构 与陈述句的词序同。
- a) 疑问词 (who, what, which, whose) 作主语. 如:

how old 多大年纪 (how 修饰形容词 old)

Who is there? 谁在那儿?(是谁?)

Who would like to go out for a stroll? 谁愿去散步?

What is in the box? 箱子里装的什么?

Which is mine? 哪一个是我的?

What makes an electric current flow through a circuit? 是什么使电流通过电路?

- b) 疑问词(what, which, whose)作定语用来修饰主语. 如; What books are on the desk? 桌子上有什么书? Which book is mine? 哪本书是我的? Whose book is on the desk? 桌子上是谁的书?
- 2) 第二种结构 疑问词+一般疑问句的词序
- a) 疑问词作宾语, 如:

What does this coat cost? 这件外衣花多少钱?
Whom are you talking to? 你在跟谁说话?(当代英语里一般用 who, 不用 whom)

What are you doing? 你在干什么? Which do you want? 你要哪一个?

b) 疑问词作表语. 如:

What's the matter? Don't you feel well? 怎么回事? 你不舒服吗?

Who is he? 他是谁?

What are the three great revolutionary movements? 三大革命运动是什么?

Whose is this? 这是谁的?

c) 疑问词作定语 (其所修饰的成分是主语、宾语或表语)· 如:

What crops do you grow in your team? 你们生产 队种些什么?

Whose book is this? 这是谁的书?

What subjects do you have in your school? 你们学校有些什么课程?

Which one do you want? 你要哪一个?

What time do you get up every morning? 你每天早晨几点起床?

What time does the train leave? 火车什么时候开? d) 疑问词作状语. 如:

When did you come back? 你什么时候回来的?

Where did you go? 你上哪儿去了?

How did you come back? 你怎么回来的?

Where was the car made? 这汽车是哪儿造的?

How long did you stay there? 你在那里呆了多久?

How many Party members are there in your class? 你们班上有多少党员?

How old are you? 你多大年纪了?

Why did you stay there so long? 你为什么在那里 呆这么久?

(四) 选择疑问句

- 17. 13 选择疑问句 (alternative question) 提供两种(有时两种以上)情况问对方选择哪一种的疑问句, 叫做选择疑问句. 这种问句要求对方用完全句子回答.
- 17. 14 选择疑问句的结构 一般疑问句 + or + 一般疑问句(后一问句常用省略结构,省去意义上与前句相同的

部分)。前一问句用升调,后一问句用降调.如:

Shall I go or will you go yourself? 是我去还是你自己去?

Are you going to the cinema or to the theatre? 你要去看电影还是去看戏?

Will he go on Monday or on Tuesday? 他是星期一走还是星期二走?

(五) 反意疑问句

17. 15 反意疑问句 (disjunctive question) 附在陈述句之后,对陈述句所叙述的事实提出相反的疑问. 反意疑问句表示怀疑或沒有把握,要求对方用 yes 或 no 来回答. 但有时,说话人用反意疑问句加以反问,目的在于加强陈述句的语气,并不要求对方回答. 反意疑问句前面的陈述句部分用逗号和降调;疑问部分用问号,表示疑问时用升调,用来加强语气时用降调. 如:

He is your teacher, isn't he? 他是你的老师,是不是? (表示疑问,用升调)

It is a good film, isn't it? 这是一部好片子, 不是吗? (加强语气, 用降调)

17. 16 反意疑问句的结构 这种结构是 be, have, 助动词或情态动词+主语 陈述句如果是肯定结构,反意疑问句须用否定结构. 反之, 陈述句如果是否定结构, 反意疑问句用肯定结构. 反意疑问句重复陈述句的主语和 be, have, 助动词或情态动词. 如陈述句中沒有 be, have, 助动词或情态动词,则须另加 do. 如:

He is a Party member, isn't he? 他是党员, 不是吗?

It's fine today, isn't it? 今天天气很好,是不是? She has not gone to town, has she? 她沒有进城, 不是吗?

They won't come, will they? 他们不会来,是不是?

You like it, don't you? 你喜欢它, 不是吗?

四、祈使句

17. 17 祈使句 (imperative sentence) 表示请求、命令等, 它的主语是 you (听话人), 通常不说出, 新使句肯定结构中的谓语动词一律用动词原形, 新使句末用惊叹号或句号, 句子用降调.

17. 18 祈使句的结构

- 1) 祈使句的肯定结构
- a) 不及物动词

Workers of all countries, unite! 全世界无产者联合起来!

Stop! 停下来!

b) 及物动词+宾语

In medical and health work, put the stress on the rural areas. 把医疗卫生工作的重点放到农村去。

Give it to me. 把它给我.

Write out the English alphabet. 抄写英语字母表. Hand in your exercises. 把练习交来.

Lay down your arms! 放下武器! (对敌喊话)

c) 连系动词+表语

Be faithful to the Party's educational task, 忠诚党 的教育事业

Be quick! 快点!

Be careful! 小心!

Don't move! 不许动!

Don't take it away. 不要把它拿走。

Don't be late! 不要迟到!

Don't be afraid of making mistakes. 不要怕犯错误.

3) 谓语动词如果是 let 的结构

Let me try. 计我试试看.

Let us hold high the great banner of Mao Tsetung Thought. 让我们高举毛泽东思想的伟大旗帜. (以上是普通祈使句)

Let's start work at once. 让我们立刻开始工作吧。 (建议,包括说话人在内)

Let him do it. 让他 (或叫他) 做吧.

〔注〕 Let's 是 let us 的简略式.

17. 19 **祈使句的主语** 通常不说出,但有时为了指明 向谁提出请求或命令,或为了加强语气,也可说出. 如:

You clean the blackboard. 你去擦黑板.

You take these old magazines to the reading-room. 你把这些旧杂志拿到阅览室去.

17. 20 加强语气 肯定祈使句前面可用助动词 do 来加强语气. 如:

Do come, please! 请一定来吧! Do be quiet. 务请安静.

五、感叹句

- 17. 21 感叹句 (exclamatory sentence) 表示喜怒哀乐等强烈感情. 感叹句用惊叹号"!",句子用降调.
- 17. 22 感叹句的结构 感叹词 how 或 what + 被强 调部分 + … (其余与陈述句结构同) 如:

How hardworking he is! 他多么努力啊!

How hard he works! 他工作得多么努力啊!

What a good comrade he is! 他是多么好的一个同志!

What good comrades they are! 他们是多么好的同志! [注] 强调动调时, 动词不移前. 如 How he works!

- 17. 23 感叹词 (exclamatory word) how 和 what
- 1) how 多么 (作状语, 修饰形容词、副词和动词)

 How funny it is! 多好笑啊! (how 修饰形容词)

 How well he writes! 他写得多好啊! (how 修饰副词)

 How he snores! 他打鼾打得多厉害! (how 修饰动词)
- 2) what 多么(作定语,修饰名词)
- a) 单数可数名词之前用 what a, 复数名词和不可数名词之前用 what. 如:

What a place it is! 多好的地方啊!
What a pity! 多可惜!
What pictures they are! 多美的图画啊!
What nonsense! 多么荒唐!

b) What 和 what a 与所修饰的名词之间可以有形容

词. 如:

What fine weather we are having today! 今天天气 多好呀!

What a miserable life we working people led in those days! 我们劳动人民过去生活多苦啊!

What a delightful evening we have had! 我们这个晚上过得多愉快啊!

71. 24 转变成感叹句 陈述句、疑问句、祈使句,甚至一个词组或一个词,都可以通过改变语调和句末用惊叹号而变成感叹句,来表示强烈的感情.如:

Wonderful! 好极了!

Nonsense! 胡说!

She went out without the doctor's permission! 她 竟然未经医生许可就出去了!

Aren't they late in getting back! 他们这么晚还没有回来!

Surely, you are not going out in this weather! 这样的天气, 你当然不会出去了吧!

六、there + be 结构

17. 25 there + be + … 结构 英语表示 "什么地方 或时间存在什么事物", 常用 "there + be + 名词 + 地点 (时间) 状语" 结构.

这种句子结构中的 there 是个引词 (由表示地点的副词 there 变来),本身沒有词义,常弱读为 [ðə]. to be 为谓语动词, be 后的名词为主语,两者的数必须一致. 句子最后

为地点(时间)状语.如:

There is a blackboard on the wall. 墙上有一块黑板. There are many desks and chairs in the room. 房间里有许多桌椅。

There is a plough on the ground. 地上有一把犁. There is some corn bread on the plate. 盘子里有 篡窓头.

There are 304 families with 1,658 people in the commune. 这个公社有 304月人家, 1,658 口人.

There is nothing permanent except change. 任何事物沒有一成不变的.

[注一] "there + be" 与 have 除用法上不同外, (have 前须有主语, "there + be"则是一种特殊结构), 在意义上 have 表示所有关系, 意谓"所有", there + be 则表示"存在". 如:

Aunt Li has a sewing machine. 李大婶有一台缝纫机. (表示李大婶所有)

There is a sewing machine in the room. 房间里有一台缝纫机、(表示房间里存在)

[注二] "there + be"之后如有一系列事物,而第一个事物是单数名词时,一般都用 there is, 不用 there are. 如:

There is a lamp, a pen, a bottle of ink and some paper on the desk. 桌子上有一盏灯, 一支钢笔, 一瓶墨水和一些纸.

17. 26 "there+be" 的否定和疑问结构 "there+be"结构变成否定句时,须在动词 to be 后加 not (any) 或 no. 变成疑问句时,将动词 to be 放在 there 之前,句子其余部分不变. 如:

there is (单数)

肯定 There is an airplane in the sky. 天上有一架飞机.

否定 There isn't an airplane in the sky.

一般疑问 Is there an airplane in the sky? 简略答语 Yes, there is. No, there isn't.

特殊疑问 What is there in the sky?

there are (复数)

肯定 There are many boats on the lake. 湖上有许多船.

否定 There are not any boats on the lake.

There are no boats on the lake.

一般疑问 Are there any boats on the lake? 简略答语 Yes, there are. No, there are not.

特殊疑问 How many boats are there on the lake?

[注] 注意下面的 "there + be" 结构的特殊疑问句形式和其他特殊用法: What is there to do here? 这里有什么可做的事?

I don't want there to be any misunderstanding. 我不想引起 误会.

There being nothing else to do, we went to the club. 没有别的事可做,我们就到俱乐部去.

There is no denying the fact. 事实是不可否认的.

17. 27 "there+be" 结构中的 be 有不同时态及其他 be 可以有各种不同时态,而且可和各种助动词或情态动词连用:如:

There was a football match at the Capital Workers' Stadium yesterday. 首都工人体育场昨天有足球赛. (过去一般时)

There were many people at the concert given by the workers. 有许多人参加了工人音乐会. (过去一般时)

There will be an English evening in the institute this

- coming Saturday. 本星期六学院里有个英语晚会。 (将来一般时)
- There is going to be a garden party in Chungshan Park on Children's Day. 儿童节那天中山公园将有游园会。
- There has been much talk about the matter. 关于 这件事已经谈论得很多了. (现在完成时)
- There can be no freedom for the labouring people in capitalist society. 在资本主义社会, 劳动人民是没有自由的. (情态动词)
- There must be no more time wasted. 不能再浪费时间了,
- 17. 28 有时不用 to be "there + be" 结构中的谓语动词,有时不用 to be, 而用 "seem to be", "happen to be" 等词组,或表示类似"存在"观念的其他动词,如: to exist, to live, to come, to stand, to occur, to lie 等. 如:
 - There seems to be some misunderstanding about the matter. 对于这个问题似乎存在着误解.
 - There happened to be a severe drought that year. 那年适逢严重旱灾.
 - On the second floor, there lived a young man, who was a steel worker. 三层楼上住了一位青年炼钢工人.

第十八章 并列句和复合句

一、并列句

I help him and he helps me. 我帮助他,他帮助我. He failed many times but he did not lose heart. 他失败了很多次,但并不灰心.

幷列句中的简单句均用降调.

- **18.** 2 并列连词(或连接副词) 根据含义不同,有下列 几类:
- 1) 用来连接两个概念 常用的有 and (同, 和), so (所以,因此), therefore (所以,因此), not only ... but (also) (不仅…而且), neither...nor (旣不…也不)等.

In 1844 Engels met Marx, and they became friends.

一八四四年恩格斯与马克思相遇,成了朋友.

The accountant did her work carefully, so she never made any mistakes. 这个会计工作认真, 所以她从来沒有出过差错.

After liberation not only did the boatmen stand up politically, but their housing also improved greatly. 船民在解放后不仅政治上站起来了,他们的居住条件也大大改善.

2) 表示在两者之间选择其一 常用的有or(或者,否则), otherwise (否则), or else (否则), either...or (不是…就是). 如:

Take an umbrella with you, or you'll get wet. 带把伞吧,要不你会淋湿的.

Either he did not speak distinctly or I did not hear well. 不是他沒讲清楚, 就是我沒听明白.

Milk must be kept in a cool place, or else it will go sour. 牛奶要放在阴凉地方,否则会发酸.

3) 表示两个概念彼此有矛盾 常用的有 but (但是), yet (然而), still (仍然), however (然而), while (而, 可是另一方面), whereas (而, 反过来)等.

We have made some progress in learning from Taching, but we still have a long way to go. 我们在学习大庆方面做了些工作。但是,我们的差距还很大。

There is prosperity in China, while things are going from bad to worse in capitalist countries. 中国繁荣昌盛,而资本主义国家的日子越来越不妙.

He has difficulty in learning geometry. However, he works hard and is making rapid_progress. 他学习几何有困难,然而他学习努力,进步很快.

They came across many difficulties, yet they finished the work in time. 他们遇到许多困难, 然而他们仍然及时完成这项工作.

You had difficulties, still you could have done it better. 你的确是有困难, 但你仍可以作得好些。

4) 说明原因 只有一个 for. 如:

He ran all the way, for he was in a great hurry, 由于他很匆忙,他一路上跑着.

She did not come to the meeting, for she was ill. 她病了,沒有来开会.

[注] 各个等立连词的用法举例, 详见 15. 4 — 15. 72.

二、复合句

(一) 概说

- 18.3 **复合句** 复合句由一个主句和一个或一个以上的 从句构成 主句为句子的主体,从句只用作句子的一个成分, 不能独立
- 18. 4 从句的基本概念及其结构 从句不能独立成为一个句子,虽然它有主语和谓语.从句通常由关联词(见 18.5) 引导,并由关联词将从句和主句联系在一起.从句的结构通常是:关联词十主语十谓语.
- **18.** 5 **关联词 (connective)** 一般含义较广,但在本书只限于下列几类:
 - 1) 从属连词 如:

that	(无词义)	before	在…前
whether	是否	afte r	在…后
if	假如, 是否	since	旣然, 自从
although	虽然	as soon as	一…就
because	因为	as long as	只要
when	当		

〔注〕 关于从属连词,可参看 15. 2.

2) 疑问代词

who which whom what whose

3) 疑问副词

when why where how

4) 关系代词

who which whom that whose

5) 关系副词

when why where

18. 6 关联词在从句中的功用举例

Everyone said that she was a good cobbler. 大家都 说她是个好修鞋工. (关联词是从属连词 that, 引导 宾语从句, 在从句中不作句子成分)

The reason for their success is that they have kept ifirmly to the Party's mass line. 他们成功的原因在于坚持党的群众路线. (关联词是 that, 引导表语从句, 在从句中不作句子成分)

Aunt Liu was making cloth shoes for the guerrillas when Lao Wang came to see her. 老王来看刘大妈时,她正在为游击队做鞋子. (关联词是从属连词 when, 引导状语从句)

Do you know when he will be back from abroad? 你知道他什么时候从国外回来吗? (关联词是疑问副词 when, 引导宾语从句, 在从句中作状语)

Tell me something about the puppet show which you saw last night. 跟我谈谈你昨晚看的那个木偶戏吧. (关联词是关系代词 which, 引导定语从句, 在从句中作宾语)

What I saw in the commune today impressed me

deeply. 今天我在公社里所见到的一切给我留下深刻的印象. (关联词是疑问代词 what, 引导主语从句,在从句中作宾语.)

- She got up very early today because she was on the morning shift. 她今天上早班, 起得很早. (关联词 是从属连词 because, 引导状语从句.)
- This is the room where Chairman Mao once worked. 这是毛主席曾经工作过的房间. (关联词是关系副词 where, 引导定语从句,在从句中作状语.)
- 18.7 从句的功用和种类 从句在复合句中,可作主语、 宾语、表语、定语、状语等.因此,可分为五类: 即主语从句、 宾语从句、表语从句、定语从句和状语从句.如:

The film shows how a nine-year-old boy grew up in the great storms of revolutionary struggle. 这部电影描写一个九岁的男孩在革命斗争的大风暴中成长的过程.(含有宾语从句)

- If it rains tomorrow, I'm afraid he will not be able to come. 如果明天下雨,恐怕他就来不了。(含有条件状语从句)
- When the landlord saw my mother was of no use to him any longer, he kicked her out. 地主发现我母亲对他沒有什么用处时,把她赶了出来. (含有时间状语从句)
- This is indeed a communist spirit which we should all try to have. 这的确是我们大家应当学习的共产主义精神. (含有定语从句)
- What the old poor peasant said proved to be correct.

那个老贫农讲的话证明是正确的.(含有主语从句) His idea is *that we clean the floor first*. 他的意见是 我们先扫地.(含有表语从句)

1949 was the year when Wuhan was liberated. — 九四九年是武汉解放的那一年. (含有定语从句)

(二) 主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句

- 18.8 名词性从句 主语从句、 表语从句和宾语从句 在复合句中的功用,和名词相同,分别作主句的主语、 表语和宾语. 因此,这三种从句可合称为名词性从句. 三者有下 列相同之处:
 - 1) 关联词相同
 - a) 连词 that, whether, if
 - b) 疑问代词 who, what, which
 - c) 疑问副词 when, where, how, why
 - 2) 三种从句均不能用逗号和主句分开,
- 18. 9 主语从句 (subject clause) 主语从句在句中作主语,它的位置与陈述句基本结构中的主语相同.

That he will come to the discussion is certain. 他来参加讨论是肯定无疑的.

Who did the work is unknown. 这件工作是谁干的, 大家都不知道.

How the advanced worker managed to raise production is of interest to us all. 这位先进工人究竟是怎样提高生产的,我们大家对此很感兴趣.

What the Party says is always true. 党所讲的话永远是对的.

主语从句放在句首,句子常常显得比较笨重,因此常把 它移至句子之后,而用引词 it 来作形式上的主语.如:

It is certain that he will come to the discussion. (由上面第一例改变而成)

It is strange that she did not come yesterday. 很 奇怪, 她昨天沒有来.

18. 10 表语从句 (predicative clause) 表语从句在句中作表语,它位于主句中的连系动词之后.

Our principle is that the Party commands the gun, and the gun must never be allowed to command the Party. 我们的原则是党指挥枪,而决不允许枪指挥党.

That is why she is so happy. 这就是她为什么这样高兴的原因.

This is what we want. 这正是我们所需要的. (这里的 what 可译为"所")

The question is whether we can finish our work by tomorrow evening. 问题在于我们能不能在明天晚上以前完成这项工作.

[注] 表语从句还可由 as if 或 as though (宛如, 好象) 引导, 如: It looks as if it is going to rain. 天好象要下雨似的.

18. 11 宾语从句 (object clause) 宾语从句的位置与陈述句基本结构中的宾语相同,宾语从句可作谓语动词的宾语,也可以作介词和非限定动词(动词不定式、动名词、分词)和某些形容词的宾语。

引导宾语从句的从属连词 that,在口语和非正式文体中常省去。

- 1) 由连词 that 引导的宾语从句
 - History shows that wars are divided into two kinds, just and unjust. 历史上的战争分为两类,一类是正义的,一类是非正义的.
 - They say he is much better. 他们说他好多了. (从 属连词 that 被省去)
 - Knowing that it was going to rain, they decided to work inside the house. 他们知道要下雨,于是就决定在室内干活. (that 从句是现在分词 knowing 的宾语)
 - I am sure (that) our experiment will succeed. 我肯定我们的实验会成功. (that 从句是形容词 sure 的宾语)
 - I am glad that you have come. 你来了,我很高兴. (that 从句是形容词 glad 的宾语)
- 2) 由连词 whether 或 if 引导的宾语从句
 - I want to know whether (或 if) you still work in the factory. 我想知道你是否还在工厂工作. (whether 从句是动词不定式 to know 的宾语)
 - I wonder whether (if) you'd like to see the colour film The Shengli Oilfield. 你要看彩色影片 《胜利油田》吗?
- 3) 由疑问代词和疑问副词引导的宾语从句 Do you know when we are going to the commune? 你知道我们什么时候到公社去?

- Do you know who lives in this room? 你知道谁住在 这间房间里?
- I wonder what he is doing now. 我不知道他在干什么。
- Does any of you know where he is? 你们中间有人知道他在哪儿吗?
- Do you know which is heavier, copper or silver? 你知道铜和银哪个重?
- Do you know why we have put off our meeting till next week? 你知道我们为什么把会延期到下星期吗?
- I was surprised at what he said. 他讲的话使我吃惊. (what 从旬是 at 的宾语)
- Chiao Yu-lu always thought of how he could do more for the Party and the people. 焦裕祿经常想如何能为党和人民多做些工作. (how 从句是成语动词thought of 的宾语)
- We do whatever the Party asks us to do. 党要我们干什么,我们就干什么.

(三) 直接引语和间接引语

18. 12 直接引语和间接引语 引用或转述别人说的话时,有两种方法: 1) 一字不改地将别人的话加以引用或复述出来,这叫做直接引语 (direct speech). 2) 用自己的话转述别人的话,这叫做间接引语 (indirect speech). 一般地讲,直接引语须放在引号内; 间接引语不必用引号, 而用宾语从句来表达. 如;

He said, "I am a turner." 他说:"我是旋工." (引号 內是直接引语)

He said that he was a turner. 他说他是旋工. (宾语 从旬是间接引语)

- 18. 13 直接引语是陈述句 直接引语如果是陈述句,变 为间接引语时, 须由从属连词 that 来引导 (that 在口语体 中可省去), that 从句之前用 say, tell 等动词. 但要注意下 列各种变化:
- 1) 人称的变化 将直接引语中的人称作相应的改变。 如:

直接引语

间接引语

me so yourself." 他 说,"是你自己这样 告诉我的."

He said, "You told He said that I had told him so myself. 他说是我自己这 样告诉他的。(you 变为 I, me 变为 him, yourself 变为 myself)

- "I am more grateful than words can 对你们的帮助有说 不出的感激."
- I said to the workers. I told the workers that I was more grateful than words could say for their help. say for vour help." 我告诉工人我对他们的帮助 我对工人们说:"我 有说不出的感激. (your 变 为their)
- 2) 时态的变化 主句中的谓语动词如果是过去时态, 直 接引语中的谓语动词的时态须有下列变化:
- a) 现在一般时变为过去一般时, 现在进行时变为过去进 行时, 现在完成时变为过去完成时

直接引语

间接引语

He said, "I am busy." He said that he was busy. Mh 他说:"我很忙." 说他很忙.

He said, "We are get- He said that they were getting in the rice." ting in the rice. 他说他们 他说:"我们正在收 正在收水稻. 水稻."

She said that she had repaired She said, "I have repaired the tracthe tractor. 她说她已经修一 tor." 她说:"我已 好拖拉机了. 经修好拖拉机了"

[注] 但直接引语如果是客观真理,现在一般时则不变(参见 8.54[注] 的 1)). 如:

直接引语 He said, "Necessity is the He said that necessity is the mother of invention."他 说:"需要是发明之母."

间接引语 mother of invention. 他说

需要是发明之母.

b) 过去一般时变为过去完成时,过去完成时则不变,仍是 过去完成时

直接引语

间接引语

She said to me, "I She told me that she had seen the film. 她告诉我她看过 saw the film." 她 对我说:"我看过这 这个影片。 个影片."

before supper."他 说:"我在晚饭前把 树种了."

He said, "I had He said that he had planted planted the trees the trees before supper. 说他在晚饭前把树种了。

【注】 直接引语中的过去一般时如与一个具体的过去时间连用,过去一般 时可不变 (参看 8.54 [注] 的 2)). 如:

直接引语

The teacher told the children, "the People's Republic of China was founded in October, 1949." 教师告 诉孩子们说:"中华人民共和 国于一九四九年十月成立."

The teacher said, "Columbus discovered America 1492." 教员说,"哥伦布在一 四九二年发现了美洲."

间接引语

The teacher told the children that the People's Republic of China was founded in October, 1949. 教员告诉孩子们 说, 中华人民共和国于一九四 九年十月成立.

The teacher said that Columbus discovered America in 1492. 教员说哥伦布在一四九二年发 现了美洲.

c) 将来一般时变为过去将来一般时,将来进行时变为过 法将来进行时,将来完成时变为过去将来完成时

直接引语

间接引语

He said, "I will help He said he would help Lao Pan. Lao Pan." 他说, 他说他要帮助老潘. "我要帮助老潘."

working in the orchard then." 他 说,"那时我将正在 果园工作."

He said, "We shall have completed the project by that time." 他说,"我 们将在那时以前完 成这项工程."

He said, "I shall be He said that he would be working in the orchard then. 他说那时他将正在果园工 作.

> He said that they would have completed the project by that time. 他说他们将在那时以 前完成这项工程.

3) 时态不变的情况 直接引语所在句中的 谓语 动 词 如果是现在或将来时态,直接引语变为间接引语时,时态一律不变. 如:

直接引语

间接引语

He says, "I cleaned He says he cleaned the floor. the floor." 他说: 他说是他擦地板了. "我擦地板了."

He will say, "I have He will say he has watered watered the flow-the flowers. 他会说他已经ers." 他会说: "我 浇花了.

已经浇花了."

- 4) 其他变化 直接引语中的一些指示代词、时间状语和地点状语须有下列变化:
 - a) this 变为 that, these 变为 those

直接引语

间接引语

He said, "This carry- He said that that carrying-ing-pole is my fapole was his father's. 他说 ther's." 他说:"这 那个扁担是他父亲的。

b) now 变为 then, yesterday 变为 the day before, today 变为 that day, tomorrow 变为 the next day, next week (month, year) 变为 the next week (month, year), ago 变 为 before

直接引语

间接引语

He said, "Now it is He said that then it was my your turn." 他说: turn. 他说该我了。
"现在该轮到你了。"

the motor yesterdav." 他说,"我昨 天把马达修了."

He said, "I repaired He said he had repaired the motor the day before. 他说 他前一天把马达修了,

seen him today." 他说:"我今天沒 有看见他."

He said, "I haven't He said that he had not seen him that day. 他说他那天沒 有看见他.

She said, "We shall help in the kitchen tomorrow." 她说: "我们明天帮厨."

She said that they would help in the kitchen the next day, 她说他们第二天帮厨,

He said. "I shall come back next week." 他说: "我 下星期回来."

He said that he would come back the next week. 他说 他下一个星期回来。

He said, "I became a welder two years ago." 他说:"我两 年前开始当电焊 T."

He said that he had become a welder two years before. 他说他两年 前开始 当电焊 т.

c) here 变为 there

直接引语

间接引语

He said. live αI He said he lived there. 他说 here." 他说: "我 他住在那里, 住在这里."

18. 14 直接引语是疑问句 直接引语如果是一般疑问 旬,变为间接引语时,须由从属连词 whether 或 if 引导, whether (if) 之前多用 ask 等动词; 直接引语如果是特殊疑 问句, 变为间接引语时, 须由疑问词引导. 不论是一般疑问 句或是特殊疑问句,变为间接引语后,词序也一律变为从句的 词序, be, have, 助动词和愤态动词一律放在主语的后面。 除上述变化外,陈述句变为间接引语时所需要的各种变化也 都适用于疑问句.

直接引语

间接引语

He said, "Are you He asked me if I was all right. 他问我有沒有受伤. all right?" 他间: "你沒有受伤吗?" 、(一般疑问句)

coming?" 他问: "她来吗?" (一般 疑问句)

He said, "Is she He asked me whether she was coming. 他问我她来不来。

you know John?" 他问我:"你认识 约翰吗?" (一般疑 问句)

He asked me, "Do He asked me whether I knew John. 他问我是否认识约 翰.

He said. "Where have you been?"他 问我:"你上哪儿去 了?"(特殊疑问句)

He asked me where I had been. 他问我上哪儿去了。

He asked me, He asked me what my name "What's your was. 他问我叫什么名字。name?" 他问我:
"你叫什么名字?"
(特殊疑问句)

"Who are you?" he He asked me who I was, 他 asked. "你是谁?" 问我是谁, 他问道, (特殊疑问句)

"How do you spell The teacher asked him how the word 'be- he spelt the word "believe". lieve'?" asked the 数员问他 believe 这个词怎 teacher. 数员问: 么拼写。
"believe 这个词怎么拼写?" (特殊疑问句)

18. 15 直接引语是祈使句 直接引语如果是祈使句, 变为间接引语时,情况有点特殊: 须将动词原形变为动词不定式, 并在动词不定式之前用 tell (命令), ask (请求), order (命令), command (命令) 等及物动词加宾语. 如:

直接引语 间接引语

He said, "Go at He told me to go at once." 他说:"你 他叫我马上去. 马上去."

He said, "Please sit He asked us to sit down. 他down." 他说: "请 请我们坐。

He said, "Don't He told us not to talk. 他要talk!" 他说:"不 我们不要讲话. 要讲话!"

We shouted to the We ordered the enemy solenemy soldiers, diers to lay down their "Lay down your arms." 我们向敌 武器.
兵喊话:"放下武器!"

The teacher said to The teacher told us to be us, "Be careful careful with our spelling. with your spell- 教师叫我们注意拼法. ing." 教师对我们 说: "注意拼法."

(四) 定语从句

18. 16 定语从句的功用和结构 定语从句 (attributive clause) 在句中作定语用,修饰句中的某一名词 (或代词). 被定语从句所修饰的词叫做先行词. 定语从句必须放在先行词之后. 引导定语从句的关联词有关系代词 who, whom, whose, which, that 和关系副词 when, where, why 等.

This is the reservoir that we built last year. 这就 是我们去年修建的水库。

The peasant who is talking with a group of women is the commune director. 正在和一群妇女谈话的那个农民是公社主任·

- All the children between the ages of three and six go to the team kindergarten, where they are well looked after. 所有三岁到六岁的小孩都上生产队幼儿园,在那儿得到很好的照顾.
- I shall never forget the day when I was admitted into the Party. 我永远不会忘记入党的那一天.

以上四旬中斜体词部分都是定语从旬,从旬的第一个词 为关系代词 (第一旬的 that, 第二旬的 who) 或关系副词 (第三旬的 where, 第四旬的 when); the reservoir, the peasant, the team kindergarten, the day 等都是先行词.

- 18. 17 关系代词和关系副词的功用 关系代词和关系 副词用来引导定语从句,在先行词和定语从句之间起纽带作用,使二者联系起来,关系代词和关系副词可作定语从句的一个句子成分,关系代词可作主语、宾语、定语,关系副词可作状语.
- 1) 作主语 关系代词在定语从句中作主语时,从句的 谓语动词的人称和数须和先行词一致.

Those who wish to go to the paper mill must be at the gate by 7:50 a.m. 要参观造纸厂的同志七点 五十分在大门口集合.

- The branch of science which deals with our lives and health is called biochemistry. 研究我们生命和健康的科学叫做生物化学.
- A great many diseases are caused by germs which get into the body by way of mouth. 许多疾病是由细菌从口进入身体而引起的.

上面各句中的关系代词 who, which, which 在从句中

均作主语。第一例中定语从句的谓语动词 wish 和先行词 those 的人称和数一致,第二例中定语从句的谓语动词 deals 和先行词 science 的人称和数一致。第三例的 get 和先行词 germs 的人称和数一致。

2) 作宾语

The comrade whom you want to see has come. 你要见的那个同志已经来了.

This is the farm machinery workshop *that* the commune set up in 1965. 这是公社在一九六五年兴建的农业机械厂。

The letter which I received yesterday was from a friend of mine. 我昨天收到的那封信是我的朋友寄来的.

在口语和非正式交体中,定语从句里作宾语的关系代词可以省略. 如上面三例中的关系代词 whom, that, which 均可省略. 又如:

This is the paper mill the commune set up in 1958. 这是公社在一九五八年建的造纸厂. (mill 后省略了 关系代词 that)

- That's all I have to say on this question. 关于这个问题我要讲的就是这些. (all 后省略了 that)
- 3) 作定语 关系代词 whose 在定语从句中作定语用,如:
 - The girl whose father was a revolutionary martyr studies very hard. 父亲是革命烈士的那个女孩学习非常刻苦.

What's the name of the young worker whose sister

is a tractor driver? 他妹妹是拖拉机手的那个年青 工人叫什么名字?

4) 作状语 关系副词 where, when 和 why 在定语 从句中分别作地点状语、时间状语和原因状语.

Have you ever visited the caves where Chairman Mao used to live? 你访问过毛主席居住过的 客 洞吗?

- I still remember the night when I came to the village. 我还记得到村子那个晚上的情景。
- The reason why the brigade has greatly increased grain output is that it has kept firmly to the socialist road. 这个大队粮食产量大大提高的原因是由于坚持社会主义道路.
- The house where the landlord used to live is now a nursery. 地主过去住的那幢房子,现在是个托儿所.
- Day and night Hsi-erh dreamed of the day when the poor peasants would be liberated. 喜儿日夜盼望有这么一天贫苦农民得到解放.

18.18 各个关系代词和关系副词的具体用法

- 1) 关系代词
- a) who 指人,在定语从句中作主语.如:

The boy who is playing on the grass is her brother. 在草地上玩的那个男孩是她的弟弟.

b) whom 指人,在定语从句中作宾语,在限制性定语 从句中可省略.如: Do you know the woman comrade (whom) we met at the gate? 你认识我们在大门口遇见的那个女同志吗?

Is the comrade (whom) we saw just now your teacher? 我们刚才看见的那位同志是你的老师吗?

c) whose 指人,在定语从句中作定语.如:

Hsiao Teng wrote a letter for Grandma Lin whose grandson is in the PLA. 小邓替林奶奶给她孙儿写信,她的孙儿是解放军.

What is the name of the boy whose father is a railway worker? 那个父亲是铁路工人的男孩叫什么名字?

d) which 指物,在定语从句中作主语和宾语.作宾语时,在限制性定语从句中可省略.如:

Here is the book (which) the teacher mentioned yesterday. 这就是老师昨天提到的那本书. (作宾语)

A dictionary is a book which gives the meaning of words. 词典是解释词的含义的.(作主语)

From crude oil we get the different fuels which drive ships, aircraft, tractors, and so on. 从原油中提炼出开动轮船、飞机、拖拉机等各种不同燃料·(作主语)

e) that 多指物,有时也指人,在定语从句中作主语或宾语.指物时其用法和 which 大致相同.如:

This is the irrigation system that (which) the peasants built last year. 这就是农民去年修的灌溉网. (作宾语,指物)

- Who is the person that is reading the big-character posters over there? 在那儿看大字报的那个人是谁?(作主语,指人)
- I've read the newspaper that (which) carries the important editorial. 我已经看过登载那篇重要社论的那份报纸. (作主语,指物)
- 2) 关系副词
- a) when 指时间,在定语从句中作状语. 如:
 - I still remember the night when Nanking was liberated. 我还记得南京解放那天晚上的情景.
 - Gone forever are the days when the inperialists could do what they pleased. 帝国主义为所欲为的日子一去不复返了。
- b) where 指地点, 在定语从句中作状语. 如:
 - Yenan was the place where Chairman Mao lived and worked during the War of Resistance Against Japan. 延安是抗日战爭期间毛主席居住和工作的地方.
 - Last year, I visited the room in Shanghai where the First Congress of the Chinese Communist Party was held. 我去年在上海参观了中国共产党 召开第一次代表大会的房间.
- c) why 指原因,在定语从句中作状语.如:
 We don't know the reason why he suddenly fell ill. 我们不知道他突然生病的原因.
- 18. 19 关系代词 whom, which 在定语从句中用作介词的宾语时 这样的介词可以放在 whom, which 之前,也可346

放在从句中的原来位置上,但含有介词的短语动词一般不可 振开,介词仍在动词之后,不可放在关系代词之前,如:

- Is he the man whom you spoke to yesterday? 他就是你昨天和他谈话的那个人吗? (介词 to 放在从句中的原来位置上)
- This is the man from whom I learnt the news. 这就是我从他那里得到这个消息的人. (介词 from 放在关系代词 whom 之前)
- The commune's total cultivated area is 13,000 mu, of which 10,000 mu are irrigated fields. 公社耕 地总面积为一万三千亩, 其中一万亩为灌溉田. (介词 of 放在关系代词 which 之前)
- The babies whom the nurses look after all look happy and healthy. 阿姨们照顾的婴儿看来都快活健康. (look after 是短语动词, 不可拆开)
- Is this the knife which you're looking for? 你找的 是这把小刀吗? (look for 是短语动词,不可拆开)
- This is the house *in which* Lu Hsun once lived. 这就是鲁迅曾经住过的房子. (介词 in 放在关系代词 which 之前,也可在从句末尾)
- [注一] 关系代词 that 作介词宾语时, 介词不可放在 that 之前, 只能放在从句中原来位置上. 如:

Can you lend me the book that you were talking about the other day? 你可以把你那天谈的那本书借给我吗? (介词 about 不可放在关系代词 that 之前)

[注二] 关系代词 which 和 whom 作介词 of 的宾语时,有下面一种特殊结构:

The whole country is going in for agriculture, the importance of which is now known to everybody. 全国正在大办农业,

农业的重要性现在已经是人人皆知了.

The textile mill has over 8,000 workers and staff, eighty pet cent of whom are women. 这家纺织厂有八千多职工,其中百分之八十是妇女.

18. 20 关系代词 which 的先行词 有时不是一个单词, 而是前面整个主句所表达的概念. 在这种情况下, which 的意思相当于 and this. 如:

The meeting was put off, which was exactly what we wanted. 会议延期了,而这正是我们大家的要求.

Comrade Chang helped me with grammar, which was very kind of her. 张同志真好, 她帮助我学习语法.

- **18.** 21 that 和 which 的区别 指物时,一般沒有什么 区别. 但在下列情况下,必须用 that.
- 1) 先行词为 all, everything, nothing, something, anything, little 等不定代词时 (something 后也可用 which)

Is there anything (that) I can do for you in town? 有什么事我可以在城里代你办吗?

That's all (that) I know. 我知道的就是这些. (that 常省去)

2) 先行词为序数词所修饰时:

The first thing (that) we should do is to work out a plan. 我们应该做的第一件事是订个计划.

The last place (that) we visited in the commune was the dairy farm. 我们在公社里最后参观的地方是牛奶场.

3) 先行词为形容词最高级所修饰时

This is one of the most exciting football games

(that) I have ever seen. 这是我所看过的足球赛 中最激烈的一场.

The Nanking Yangtse River Bridge is the longest bridge (that) they have ever seen. 南京长江大桥 是他们见过的最长的一座桥,

It was the finest industrial exhibition that we ever 那是我们所见过的最好的一个工业展览会. saw.

限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句 句分限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句两种. 限制性定语 从句为先行词不可少的定语:如果将这种定语从句省去,主句 的意思就会不完整,这种定语从旬和主旬关系十分密切,不 可用逗号与主句隔开. 非限制性定语从句是先行词的附加说 明,如果省去,也不致影响主句的意思. 它和主句之间往往 用逗号分开,

含有限制性定语从句

This is the best film that I have ever seen. 这是我所看 过的电影中最好的 一个.

She is the nurse who looks after the children. 她就是照 料这些孩子的阿 姨.

Have you ever been In the old days, I

含有非限制性定语从句

Last night I saw a very good film, which was about the Long March. 昨晚我看了 一个很好的电影, 它是关于 长征的.

This letter is from my sister. who is working in the commune nursery now, 这封信 是我姐姐客来的, 灿 公社托儿所工作.

where the wellknown Red Canal is? 你到讨著名的 红旗渠所在的那个 县吗?

to the county was a dry mountain area, where water was as precious as oil. 林县过去是干旱的 山区, 那儿水贵如油.

- 「注」 that 所引导的定语从句一般都是限制性定语从句。
- 18.23 有一种定语从句可用作先行词的同位语 汝种 定语从句多用从属连词 that 来引导 如:

The news that we had built a 10,000-ton freighter quickly spread throughout the country. 我国造 成万吨货轮的消息,迅速传遍全国.(that 引导的从 句是 news 的同位语)

18. 24 定语从句为分词短语所代替 有 who 或 that (which) 作主语的限制性定语从句有时可以为分词短语所代 替. 分词短语比定语从句简练.

> There are many students who are studying English in this school. 有许多学生在这所学校学习英语. There are many students studying English in this school.

(五) 状语从句

18. 25 状语从句 (adverbial clause) 状语从句在句中 作状语,可修饰主句中的动词、形容词和副词等. 状语从句由 河所引导. 状语从句的位置可放在句首或句末。放在 从旬后面常用一逗号. 放在旬末时, 从旬前面往往 状语从句根据它们的含义可分为时间、地点、原

- 因、目的、结果、方式、让步、条件等八种,
- 18. 26 时间状语从句 由下列从属连词引导: when (当…时), as (当, 一边…一边), while (在…期间), after (在…之后), before (在…之前), as soon as (—…就), since (自从), till (或 until, 直 到), whenever (任何时候) 等.
 - When my cousin came yesterday, I was playing volley-ball, 昨天我表哥来时,我正在打排球.
 - When the air moves, it is called wind. 空气流动, 就产生风.
 - As the boys walked along the lake, they sang merrily. 这些男孩一边沿着湖走,一边愉快地唱歌.
 - After the chairman declared the Congress open, the band played the National Anthem. 主席宣布大会开幕后,乐队奏国歌.
 - While the teacher explained the text, the students listened attentively and took notes. 老师讲解课 文时,同学注意地听并且做笔记.
 - As soon as the workers got to the shop, they got down to work. 工人们一到车间就开始工作.
 - We have been to the commune twice since it was set up in 1958. 这个公社从一九五八年成立以来,我们去过两次
 - She was at school before she became a barber. 当 理发员之前, 她在念书.
 - I waited till (until) she came back. 我一直等到她回来,

Whenever he had time, Secretary Wu would drop in to have a chat with the old workers. 吳书记只要有容,就去找老工人谈心。

[注] when, as, white 都可表示时间, 其区别在于: 用 when 时, 从句的动作和主句的动作可以同时, 也可以先于主 句的 动作. 用 as 时, 主句和从句的动作往往同时发生, 有时可译作"一边…—边". 用 while 时, 主句和从句的动作同时发生. 如:

When I lived in the countryside I learned a lot from the peasants. 我在农村时,向农民学到很多东西。(两个动作在同一时期发生)

When I pressed the button the radio stopped. 我接了电钮, 收 音机就停了. (两个动作一前一后)

When I opened the window I saw a bulldozer at work on the worksite. 我打开窗户,看见一台推土机在工地上工作. (两个动作一前一后)

She sang as she worked. 她边工作边唱歌. (两个平行的动作) While you were away, two comrades came to see you. 你不在时有两个同志来看你. (后一动作发生在 while 从句所表示的一段时间之内)

18. 27 地点状语从句 由 where, wherever 引导.

Where there is oppression, there is resistance. 哪里有压迫,哪里就有反抗.

Wherever you work, you must always serve the people wholeheartedly. 不论你在哪里工作,你都必须始终全心全意为人民服务.

Lei Feng was always ready to give help where help was needed. 不论哪里需要帮助, 雷锋点是欣然而去.

18. 28 **原因状语从句** 由从属连词 because (因为), since (既然), now that (既然), as (由于) 等引导.

We work hard at English because we know that a foreign language is a weapon in the class struggle.

我们努力学习英语,因为我们知道外语是阶级斗争 的武器

Now that everybody is here, let's begin our discussion. 既然大家都到了,我们就开始讨论吧.

As the weather was fine, we decided to climb the mountain. 由于天气很好,我们决定爬山.

Since he is busy, I won't trouble him. 既然他很忙,我就不打扰他了.

〔注〕 because 表示"原因"的语气最强,回答 why? (为什么?),它所引导的从句是全句重心所在. as 表示"原因"时语气不如 because 那么强、它所引导的从句往往放在主句前面,用来说明原因(这种原因往往比较明显). since 和 as 相似,但表示稍加分析后的原因,而且多少是对方已知悉而不待言的. for 用作连词时,其意和 because 相似,但 for 所表示的原因往往提供上文未交代过的情况;又作为等立连词,它所引导的分句只能放在句子后部(或单独成为一个句子),和 because 引导的从句可以放前放后不一样.(参见 15.8的 3), 15.15 和 15.26, 15.50),如:

The labouring people were oppressed in the old society mainly because they had no political power. 劳动人民在旧社会受压迫,, 主要是因为他们没有权。(because 表示原因, 语气强, 回答"为什么?")

Maize is also called Indian corn because it was first grown by the American Indians. 因为玉米是美洲印地安人首先种植的,所以又叫做印地安玉米。(用 because 回答"为什么?")

As it was raining hard, they stayed home. 由于兩下得很大,他们只好呆在家里, (as 表示较明显的原因)

Since everybody is here, let's begin our discussion. 大家都到了, 开始讨论吧、(since 表示已知悉的原因)

The days are short, for it is now December. 白天短了,因为现在已是十二月。(for 表示新的情况)

It must have rained last night, for the road is wet. 昨夜肯定下雨了,因为路是湿的.(同上例)

She looks pale, for she has been ill for some time. 她面色苍

白,因为她病了好久。(同上)

18. 29 **目的状语从句** 由 that (以便), so that (以便), in order that (以便) 等引导.

They set out early (so) that they might arrive in time. 他们早点动身,以便淮时到达.

- Let's work harder so that we may fulfil our plan ahead of schedule. 让我们工作得更努力些,以便能提前完成计划.
- The teacher spoke slowly and in simple English so that the students could understand her. 教员讲得慢,用的英语简单,以便学生听得懂.
- Hsiao Wang got up early in order that he might have time to fetch water and sweep the yard for Aunt Liu. 小王早晨起得很早,为的是有时间给刘大妈担水扫院子.
- 【注】 in order that 和 so that 引导的目的状语从句的谓语动词常用情态动词 may (might), 但 so that 引导的从句中亦可用 can (could).
- **18.** 30 **结果状语从句** 由 so that (结果), so...that (如此…以致于) 引导.
 - We worked fast and well, so that we overfulfilled our production plan. 我们工作得又快又好,结果我们超额完成了生产计划.
 - The black worker was so poor that he could not afford to buy a pair of shoes for his son. 这个黑人工人穷得无钱给他儿子买双鞋.
 - 18. 31 比较 (或方式) 状语从句 由 as (正如), than

(比), as ... as (和···一样), not as (或 so) ... as (和···不一样), as if (或 as though, 好象, 宛如), the more...the more (越···越) 等引导.

Kweilin is as beautiful as Hangchow. 桂林和杭州一样美丽.

Lesson Ten is not so difficult as Lesson Nine. 第 十课不象第九课那么难。

Is Africa as large as Asia? 非洲和亚洲一样大吗?

— No, Africa is not as large as Asia. 不,非洲不如亚洲大。

Canada is a little bigger than the United States. 加拿大比美国稍大一些.

The more we can do for you, the happier we will be, 我们为你们做得越多, 越感到高兴.

The sooner, the better. 越快越好.

The greater the mass of a body, the greater is its inertia. 物体的质量越大,它的惯性就越大.

It is hotter in summer in Wuhan than in Harbin. 武 汉夏天比哈尔滨热.

You may do as you please. 你愿意怎么干都行,

18. 32 让步状语从句 由 though (虽然), although (虽然), as (尽管), even if (即使), even though (即使), however (尽管), whatever (无论什么), whoever (不论是谁), no matter... (不管) 等引导.

The secretary often takes part in collective productive labour although he is very busy. 书记尽管 很忙,仍经常参加集体生产劳动.

- However hard I try, I can't pronounce that word properly. 我尽管费了好大的劲,那个词我还是念不好.
- Hard as the conditions were, Chang Szu-teh persevered in his studies. 条件再坏, 张思德也坚持学习.
- Late as it was, they continued the work. 时间尽管不早了, 他们仍然继续工作。
- Although he is not strong, yet he works just as hard as everyone else. 他虽然体弱, 但工作和其他人一样努力.
- Whatever work we do we are all working for the Party and the people. 不管我们做什么,都是为党和人民工作.
- 【注一】 让步状语从句由 as 引导时, 从句的表语常放在句首, 例见上面第三、四句.
- 【注二】 在用 however 引导的从句中, however 后面须紧跟形容词或副词, 见上面第二句。
- 18. 33 条件状语从句 由 if (假如), unless (除非, 若不), suppose (假设), supposing (假设), provided (假若, 设者), as (so) long as (只要) 等引导.
 - If you work hard, you are bound to succeed. 你如 努力工作的话,肯定会成功.
 - Suppose (supposing) he does not come, what shall we do? 他要是不来,我们该怎么办?
 - He is sure to come unless he has some urgent business. 除非有急事,他一定会来.

18. 34 **although 与 because 的用法** 汉语常常成对地使用 "虽然…但是" "因为…所以"; 但英语里一般用 "虽然", 就不用"但是", 用了"因为"即不用"所以". 如:

Although he is very busy, he has never been absent from class. 虽然他非常忙,但从不缺课.

Because it looked like rain, they decided to cancel the trip. 因为可能会下雨,所以他们决定不去了。

第十九章 谓语动词和主语的一致

19. 1 谓语动词和作主语的名词的一致 谓语动词必须和作主语的名词的人称和数一致 (agreement). 如:

The work is not so easy as I expected. 这项工作不 象我想象的那么容易.

Comrade Hsu teaches us chemistry. 徐同志教我们 化学.

The May 4th Movement was a great anti-imperialist and anti-feudal revolutionary movement. 五四运动是伟大的反帝反封建的革命运动.

The peasants were busy threshing wheat on the threshing ground. 农民在打谷场上忙着打麦子.

Many cadres are studying at this May 7th cadres' school. 很多干部在这所五·七干校学习.

She is singing a Tibetan folksong. 她在唱西藏民歌.

The children are playing outside. 孩子们在外面玩.

My mother has been teaching since liberation. 从解放以来我母亲一直教书。

Many trees have been planted on our campus. 我们 校园里种了许多树.

19. 2 **谓语动词和作主语的人称代词的一致** 谓语动词 **必**须和作主语的人称代词的人称和数一致. 如:

I am a construction worker. 我是个建筑工人.

You are wrong。 你错了。

She is French. 她是法国人。

I have a brother. He has two sisters. 我有一个兄弟,他有两个姐妹.

He was a tenant farmer before liberation. 他解放前是佃农.

Were you in the classroom yesterday evening? 你 昨晚在教室里吗?

19. 3 两个或两个以上作主语用的单数名词用 and 连接时 这时谓语动词用复数. 如:

Wei Ying and Wei Lan are twin sisters. 卫英和卫 兰是孪生姐妹.

A cadre and an oil worker are coming to speak to us about the two-line struggles in their oilfield. 一位干部和一位石油工人要来给我们讲油田上的两条路线斗爭.

但假如 and 所连接的两个词是指一个观念或同一个人时,谓语动词则用单数,如:

The poet and writer has come. 那位诗人兼作家来了. (一个人)

19. 4 两个作主语用的名词或代词由介词 with 连接时 这时谓语动词一般和 with 前的一个名词或代词的人称和数 一致. 如:

A woman with a baby is coming to the nursery. 一个妇女抱着一个婴儿正向托儿所走来.

19. 5 两个作主语用的名词或代词由 either...or, neither ... nor 连接时 这时谓语动词一般应和后一个名词或代词的

人称和数一致. 如:

19. 6 两个作主语用的名词或代词由 as well as 连接时谓语动词须和前一名词或代词的人称和数一致 如:

He as well as his sister is a League member. 他和 他妹妹都是团员.

The girl as well as the boys has learned to drive a car. 这个姑娘和男孩子一样, 也学会了开汽车.

19. 7 people, police, militia, cattle 等作主语时 后面的 动词用复数. 如:

There were many people present at the kindergarten sports meet. 有许多人观看了幼儿园运动会.

The police are attacking the unemployed black workers. 警察在攻击失业的黑人工人.

The militia are singing "Three Main Rules of Discipline and Eight Points for Attention". 民兵在唱《三大纪律八项注意》歌.

The cattle are grazing in the fields. 一群牛在田野里吃草.

19.8 作主语用的集体名词 family, crew, class, crowd, committee, audience 等后面谓语动词的用法 当这些词作为一个整体看待时,后面谓语动词须用单数;如就其中一个个成员来考虑时,谓语动词则用复数 如:

The family were listening to the radio. 全家正在听

收音机.

My family is a big one. 我的家人口多.

The Party Committee were unanimous in their opinion. 党委会委员之间意见完全一致.

19. 9 表示"时间""金钱"等的名词的复数作主语时谓语动词可用单数;这是因为作主语的名词在概念上是"一体的". 如:

Five minutes is enough. 五分钟就够了. Ten dollars is too dear. 十块钱太贵了.

19.10 成对的名词作主语时用单数谓语动词. 如:

Bread and butter is a daily food in the west. 抹黃油的面包是西方人每天的食品.

His gratitude and devotion to the Party is boundless. 他对党无限感激、无限忠诚。

第二十章 句子的独立成分

- **20.2 感叹词作独立成分** 威叹词表示喜怒哀乐等**感** 情,在句子中常用作独立成分.如:

Oh, it's Lao Wang. 哦,是老王啊.

Hullo, Hsiao Li, how do you do? 喂, 小李你好? You are reading the newspaper, eh? 你在看报呀? (eh 表示惊奇或询问)

Well, go on. 好,继续往下讲!

Now, come on! 来呀! (now 无词义,表示一种请求 语气)

20. 3 **yes 和 no** yes 和 no 在句子里也是一种独立成分. 如:

Yes, you are right。 对, 你说得对.

Is the book easy to read? — No, I am afraid not. 这本书容易读吗? ——不, 我看不容易.

20.4 称呼语 (direct address) 称呼人的用语, 叫做称呼语, 称呼语在句中用作独立成分, 如:

Where are you going, Lao Wang? 老王, 你上哪儿去?

Please tell me how to pronounce this word, *Teacher*. 老师, 请告诉我这个词怎么念.

Comrades, let's go there at once! 同志们, 我们马上 到那里去吧!

People of all nationalities in our country, unite to win still greater victories! 全国各族人民团结起来, 爭取更大的胜利!

20. 5 **情态词 modal word** 有一些情态词, 即表示说话人的语气的词, 如 perhaps (也许), certainly (当然), of course (当然), maybe (也许), indeed (的确), in fact (事实上), actually (实际上), undoubtedly (无疑地), fortunately (幸好)等, 常用作独立成分 如:

Perhaps he is right. 也许他是对的.

Maybe she is ill. 也许她病了,

Fortunately I was there. 幸好我在那里.

Our teacher will *probably* be at the meeting. 我们的老师大概会参加会议。

[注] 情态词常放在句首和句中,有时也放在句尾。它们在句中的位置和 often, sometimes 等副词相似。

20. 6 插人语 (parenthetical statement) 句中可插入一些 I think (我想), I believe (我相信), I suppose(我想)等说法,这种说法叫做插入语.插入语在句中应作为独立成分来看.如:

It's a good water-colour, *I think*. 我看这是一张很好的水彩画

He is an honest man, I believe. 我相信他是老实人。 [注] 如说 I think it's a good water-colour, 则 I think 是主句, it's a good water-colour 是宾语从句。

第二十一章 it 的用法

一、代词 it

21.1 指除人以外的一切生物和事物 代词 it 可用来**指除人以外的一切生物和事物**,无阴阳性之分.如:

Have you seen my watch?—Yes, it is in the drawer. 你看见我的手表了吗?——我看见了,它在抽屉里.

There is a strong horse under the tree. It belongs to the commune. 树下有匹牡马,它是公社的.

- Imperialism is outwardly strong but inwardly weak because it has no support from the people. 帝国主义是外强中干的,因为它沒有人民的支持。
- **21.** 2 代表前面已提到的或将会发生的某件事情 代词 it 有时不特指某件东西,而代表前面已提到的或将会发生的某件事情. 如:
 - I had a chat with our group leader. It was very helpful. 我和组长谈了一次话,对我非常有帮助.
 - It happened during the Long March. 事情发生在长征的时候. (指下文所说的事情)
 - It would be ideal if you could join us. 假如你能加入我们的话,那就太好了 (it 指 if 从句)
 - 21.3 指时间、距离和自然现象 这时它在句中作主语.

- What time is *it* now?—*It* is half past six. 现在几点 钟?——六点牛. (指时间)
- It is late autumn now. 现在是深秋. (指时间)
- It is a long way to the Ming Tombs Reservoir. 到十三陵水库去的路很远. (指距离)
- Is it very far to the cable office? 到电报局去很远吗?(指距离)
- It is cold today, isn't it? 今天很冷,是不是?(指天气)
- I hope it will be fine tomorrow. 我希望明天是个好天. (指天气)
- It is raining hard. 雨下得很大. (指自然现象)
- It did not snow much last winter. 去年冬天雪下得不多. (指自然现象)
- 〔注〕 关于人称代词 it 和指示代词 it, 可分别参看 4.4 和 4.14.

二、引词it

- 21. 4 作形式主语 (formal subject) 的引词 it 当主语是动词不定式、动名词、主语从句时,往往把主语放在谓语动词之后,而用 it 放在句首. 这个 it 称为引词 (anticipatory) it, 作形式主语, 放在谓语动词后的主语是填实主语.
 - 1) 真实主语是动词不定式
 - It is right to rebel against reactionaries. 对反动派造 反有理
 - Is it possible to learn typewriting very quickly? 能够 很快地学会打字吗?

- It is necessary for us to have some exercise every day. 我们每天需要一些运动.
- 2) 真实主语是动名词
 It is no use talking. 光说沒有用.
 Is it any good trying? 试有用吗?
- 3) 真实主语是主语从句
 - It is clear that he means well. 很明显, 他的用意是好的.
 - It is a pity that you didn't go to see the film. 你没去看这个电影, 真是可惜.
 - It is said that he has become a Party member. 听说 他已经入党了.
 - It seems that he is making rapid progress in ideological remoulding. 看来他在思想改造方面进步很快.
- 21. 5 作形式宾语 (formal object) 当复合宾语中的宾语是动词不定式、动名词、宾语从句时,往往把宾语放在它的补足语的后面,而用引词 it 放在全句谓语动词和宾语补足语的中间. 放在宾语补足语后面的宾语叫做真实宾语, 放在全句谓语动词和宾语补足语中间的引词 it 叫做形式宾语. 如:

She found it very difficult to answer the question. 她 國到这个问题很难回答. (宾语是动词不定式)

- He feels it his duty to help others. 他處到帮助別人是他的责任. (宾语是动词不定式)
- I think it no use telling them. 我认为告诉他们沒有用. (宾语是动名词)
- We have made it clear that agriculture is the foundation of the national economy. 农业是国民经济的基

础,这我们已经说清楚了,(宾语是宾语从句)

We think it very important that we should take part in the three great revolutionary movements. 我们认为参加三大革命运动是非常重要的. (宾语是宾语从句)

21. 6 引词 it 用在强调结构中 当我们要强调句子的 某一部分 (通常总是主语、宾语或状语) 时,常用"It is (was) +被强调部分+who (that)..."结构. 被强调部分指人时须用 who,其他情况用 that. 假如原来句子为:

We held a League meeting in the club yesterday. 我们昨天在俱乐部里开了一次团的会议.

我们可以用下面四个强调结构来分别强调句中的主语、 宾语和两个状语:

- 1) It was we who held a League meeting in the club yesterday. (强调主语 we)
- 2) It was a League meeting that we held in the club yesterday. (强调直接宾语 a League meeting)
- 3) It was in the club that we held a League meeting yesterday. (强调地点状语 in the club)
- 4) It was yesterday that we held a League meeting in the club. (强调时间状语 yesterday)

再看下面一些例句:

5) Weapons are an important factor in war, but not the decisive factor; it is people, not things, that are decisive. 武器是战争的主要因素,但不是决定的因素,决定的因素是人不是物. (强调 people, not things)

- 6) It was the Chinese working women who suffered most in the old society. 中国旧社会受苦最深的是劳动妇女. (强调 Chinese working women)
- 7) It was after liberation that the Chinese people began a new life. 只是在解放后,中国人民才开始了新的生活. (强调 after liberation)
- 8) Marx and Engels came to know each other in Paris in 1844. It was then that their great friendship began. 马克思和恩格斯于一八四四年在巴黎认识,就在那时开始了他们之间的伟大的友谊. (强调 then)
- 9) It is because the book is so useful for my work that I bought it. 因为这本书对我的工作很有用我才 买它. (强调 because it is so useful for my work)
- 【注】 强调结构中的被强调成分如果是主语和宾语,必须用 who 或 that (有时也用 which) (在从句中作主语或宾语),如上面例句 1), 2), 5), 6). 被强调成分如果是状语,必须用 that,如上面例句 3), 4), 7), 8), 9).

第二十二章 省略和倒装

一、省略

- **22.1 省略 (ellipsis)** 为了避免重复, 句子中某些部分可以省略, 句子可以省略的有下列各部分:
 - 1) 省掉主语 (多限于少数现成说法)
 Thank you for your help. 谢谢你的帮助。
 See you tomorrow. 明天见。
 - 2) 省掉谓语动词或表语等
 - a) 省掉谓语动词

Some of us study Russian, others English. 我们有的 学俄语,有的学英语. (others 后省掉 study)

He got up earlier than I today. 他今天起得比我早, (I 后省掉 got up)

On the right hand of Tien An Men Square stands the Great Hall of the People, and on the left, the Museum of Chinese History. 天安门广场的右边是人民大会堂, 左边是中国历史博物馆. (on the left 后省掉 stands)

b) 省掉连系动词

Comrade Ma is a bus-driver, his wife, a conductor. 马同志是公共汽车司机, 他的妻子是售票员. (his wife 后省掉 is)

His face is tanned and his hands big and strong. 他 的脸晒得很黑, 他的双手大而有力. (hands 后省掉 are)

She is as tall as I. 她和我一般高. (I 后省掉 am)

c) 省掉表语

Are you ready?—Yes, I am. 你准备好了吗?—— 是,准备好了. (am 后省掉 ready)

3) 同时省掉句子几个部分 有时好几个句子成分都被 省掉,特别在表示比较的状语从句中,在对疑问句的简略回 答中,以及在反意疑问句或选择疑问句中. 如:

When heated, water changes into vapour. 水加热会变成蒸汽. (when 后面省掉 water is)

- In winter it is colder in Peking than in Kwangchow. 北京的冬天比广州冷. (than 后省略 it is)
- She pledged herself to complete her father's unfinished task, whatever the cost. 她立誓不管付出 多大代价, 要完成她父亲未完成的任务. (the cost 之后省略主语和谓语动词 it was)
- When did you read the play? Long ago. (= I read it long ago.) 你什么时候读的这个剧本?——很久以前.
- Have you ever been to Sinkiang?—Never. (= I have never been there.) 你到过新疆吗?——从来沒有.
- You are a worker, aren't you? (= aren't you a worker?) 你是工人, 不是吗?
- Has he gone or not? (= Has he gone or has he not gone?) 他走了沒有? (选择疑问句)

[注一] 在以 if, when, though, as, as if (好象) 等连词引导的从句中, 如果从句中的主要动词是 be, 可以将主语和动词 be 省掉.

When you do this exercise, make changes in the sentence structure when (if) necessary. 做这个练习时,必要时可以改动句子结构. (when 或 if 之后省掉 it is)

He is very good at farm work, though very young. (=though he is very young) 他虽然年纪很轻,但很会干农活.

The boy looked as if afraid of nothing. (= as if he were afraid of nothing) 那男孩看来好象什么都不怕.

上述例句中的省略从句, 除 if (when) necessary 等成语外, 共主语均须和主句的主语相同。

[注二] 在下面的句子中, 动词不定式记号 to 的后面省去了动词原形及 其以后的部分:

You may go with them if you want to. 你愿意的话, 也可以和他们一起去. (to 后省去 go with them)

Will you be able to come? — I'd love to: But I'm busy. 你来吗? —— 唔,我倒很想来,可是我现在有事. (to 后省去come)

二、倒装

- 22. 2 倒装 (inversion) 英语最基本的词序 "主语+谓语动词"通常十分固定·如果把谓语动词放在主语前面,这就叫做倒装。将谓语动词全移至主语之前,称为完全倒装;如果只是把助动词或情态动词放在主语之前,称为部分倒装。
 - 1) 完全倒装 (complete inversion)
 Out rushed the boy. 那男孩冲了出去.
 Then came the students. 接着来的是学生。
 - 2) 部分倒装 (partial inversion)

Is the young worker cleaning the machine? 那位青年工人在擦机器吗?

Has he come? 他来了吗?

Will you go to the library with us? 你愿意同我们 一道去图书馆吗?

倒装的情况有二:

1) 由于一定语法结构的需要

Have you bought the latest Hongqi? 你买了最近一期 《红旗》吗?

Where are you going? 你上哪儿去?

May I borrow this magazine? 我可以借这本杂志吗? Was the Paris Commune founded in 1871? 巴黎公社是在一八七一年建立的吗?

2) 由于强调

Never have I read a book like this. 我从未读过这样的书.

Only after liberation was Lei Feng able to eat regularly and go to school. 解放后雷锋才能吃饱饭和上学.

- **22.** 3 **倒装结构的基本用法** 在下列情况下,通常用**倒**装句
 - 1) 在问句中

What does your father do? 你父亲干什么工作? How are you? 你身体好吗?

Is he singing or is his brother? 是他在唱, 还是他弟 弟在唱?

Was your commune set up in 1958? 你们的公社是一九五八年成立的吗?

2) 在 "there+be" 结构里

There are many factories in Peking. 北京有很多工

There is a picture of Lenin on the wall. 墙上有张 列宁像.

There are different forms of energy. 有各种不同形式的能量.

3) 在以 here (这里), there (那里) 等副词开头的句子里 (须用现在一般时)

There goes our squad leader. 我们的班长走了。

There goes the bell. 铃响了.

Here is a book for you. 这儿有本书给你.

Here comes the bus. 公共汽车来了.

[注] 但如果主语是人称代词,主语和主要动词的词序不变。 There he comes. 他来了。 Here it is. 它在这儿。

4) 虚拟结构中的条件从句省去 if 时 这时 were, had 和 should 须移至主语之前. (参看 12.6)

Should they attack us, we'll wipe them out completely and thoroughly. 如果他们向我们进攻,就把他们全部彻底消灭掉.

Were there no steel, there would be no modern industry. 沒有钢就不会有现代工业.

5) 直接宾语如果是直接引语 直接引语的全部或一部 分往往放在句首,这时主语和谓语动词也可颠倒位置.

"You all made great progress last term," said the teacher. 教员说: "你们上学期都取得了很大的进步。"

- "Teacher," replied the monitor, "our success is due to the Party's leadership and your hard work." "老师,"班长回答说,"我们的成绩应归功于党的领导以及你的辛勤劳动。"
- 6) 在某些表达祝愿的句子里

 Long live the people! 人民万岁!

 May you all be happy! 祝你们大家愉快!

 May you succeed! 祝你成功!
- 7) 在用 so 表示"我也这样"一类概念的结构里 其公式是: (注意:下面 be 和 have 不是助动词)

肯定: So+be, have, 助动词或情态动词+主语

否定: Neither (Nor) + be, have, 助动词或情态动词 +主语

He has visited the museum. — So have I. 他参观 了博物馆. ——我也参观了.

She takes an active part in social work. —So does every one of us. 她积极参加社会工作. ——我们每一个人都这样.

They can play chess. — So can we. 他们会下棋.——我们也会.

He is a basket-ball fan. — So am I. 他是一个篮球迷. ——我也是.

- I did not do my homework yesterday evening. Neither did I. 我昨天晚上沒有做家庭作业. —— 我也沒有做。
- 8) 在某些副词开头的句子中 在用 never (从来不), hardly (几乎不), only (只有), no sooner ... than (刚-----

就), nor (也不), scarcely ... when (...就...), little (很少) 等 副词开头的句子中,如:

> Never before have I seen such a wonderful park. 从未看到过这样好的公园,

> Hardly did I think it possible. 我几乎认为这是不可 能的.

> No sooner had I gone out than he came to see me. 我刚出去,他就来看我来了,

> So loudly did he speak that everyone could hear him clearly. 他讲话声音很大,每个人都听得很清楚.

> Under no circumstances will we be the first to use nuclear weapons. 我们在任何情况下决不首先使用 核武器.

9) 在表示动作的简短句子里, 为了表达生动, 有时把副 词放在句首,同时把谓语动词(常为实义动词)放在主语之前.

> In came the teacher and the lesson began. 教师走了 进来,接着就开始上课.

Away hurried the hunters. 猎人们匆忙地走了, Out rushed the boy. 那男孩冲了出去.

[注] 但如果主语是人称代词,主语和谓语动词的位置不变,只将副词放 在旬首.

In he came and the lesson began. 他走了进来,接着就开始上 课.

Awav they hurried. 他们匆忙地走开了。

Out he rushed. 他冲了出去.

10) 在其他情况下 有时因为句子的主语比较长, 是为了强调表语,或是为了更紧密地与上文衔接,常将表语 放在句首,同时颠倒主语和谓语动词的位置。

- On the rostrum were portraits of Chairman Mao and Chairman Hua, with red flags on either side. 主席台上悬挂着毛主席和华主席的画像,画像两边掛着红旗。
- Shoulder to shoulder, singing and holding red banners, the black workers marched along. On the banners were the words: "We want bread." 黑人工人们肩幷肩,唱着歌,举起红旗前进.旗子上写着: "我们要面包".
- Among them was a soldier who was wounded in the stomach. 他们当中有一个胃部受伤的七兵.
- Gone forever are the days when the Chinese people had to use foreign oil. 中国人民用洋油的日子已经一去不复返了。

第二十三章 标点符号

23. 1 概说 标点符号 (punctuation mark) 在书面文字里用来表示各句之间和各句子成分之间的关系,使其思想清楚明确,易为读者所了解,英语的标点符号与汉语的标点符号有类似之处,但也有不同之点,试比较:

符号名称	英语	汉语
句号 period	•	o
逗号 comma	ÿ	
分号 semi-colon	;	;
冒号 colon	ŧ	:
问号 note of interrogatio	n ?	
惊叹号 note of exclamati	on!	!
破折号 dash		•
引号 quotation marks	un.	
连字号 hyphen	•	• ,
所有格符号或字母省略符	号	
apostrophe	•	(无)
顿号	(无)	
2 2 1 1 1 2 2 2 2		•

23. 2 逗号(,) 表示最短的停顿.

1) 在句子里面的幷列的成分之间要用逗号.
The Chinese Communist Party is a great, glorious and

correct party. 中国共产党是伟大、光荣、正确的党.

- In our kitchen-garden we have egg-plants, cabbages, potatoes, sweet-potatoes and cucumbers. 我们的 荣园里有茄子、白菜、马铃薯、甘薯和黄瓜
- Radios, motor cars and big machines made in Shanghai go to every part of the country. 上海造的收音机、汽车和大型机器行销全国.
- 【注一】 在英语中,最后一个并列成分前要用连接词 and 或者 or. 【注二】 在汉语中,一般用领号(、)表示句中并列成分之间的停顿.
- 2) 独立成分,即不属于句子组成部分的词或词组,要用逗号与句子的其他部分分开,这些词或词组主要有: a) 称呼语; b) 同位语; c) well, yes, no; d) 插入语等.
 - a) Workers of all countries, unite! 全世界无产者, 联合起来!
 - Congratulations, Comrade Li! 祝贺你, 李同志! (以上第一句的逗号在称呼语之后, 第二句的逗号 在称呼语之前.)
 - b) Peking, the capital of our motherland, is one of the largest cities in the world. 我们祖国的首都北京,是全世界的最大城市之一.
 - For the sake of the revolution Lei Feng was determined to be a screw, a screw that would never rust! 为革命, 雷锋决心做一颗永不生锈的螺丝钉!
 - c) No, we are not afraid of difficulties. 不, 我们不怕困难.
 - d) This experiment will succeed, I believe. 我相信这个试验会成功.

- Will she go to the university, do you think? 你看她会去上大学吗?
- 3) 状语短语放在句首时,后面一般要用逗号,
 - On October 1, 1949, Chairman Mao proclaimed the birth of the People's Republic of China. 一九四九年十月一日,毛主席宣布中华人民共和国诞生.
 - Since the establishment of the socialist system in China in 1949, women have stood up politically, economically and culturally. 自从一九四九年在中国建立社会主义制度以来,妇女在政治,经济和文化上都得到了翻身。
- 4) 幷列句的各分旬通常被连词和逗号分开。

Aunt Liu had a fever, and the nurse took her temperature. 刘大娘发烧了,护士给她量体温.

Hurry up, or you'll miss the bus. 赶快, 要不你会 误车的.

【注】 一般说来,分句之间必须用连词,但如果分句之间关系很紧凑,也 可以不用连词,而只用逗号分开.

Dig tunnels deep, store grain everywhere, and never seek hegemony. 深挖洞, 广积粮, 不称霸.

- 5) 状语从句在主句前面,一般用逗号.
- If he comes, tell him to wait for me. 他来了的话, 叫他等我.
 - When the foreign guests got to the village, the peasants gave them a warm welcome. 外国客人到 达村子的时候,农民热烈欢迎他们•

Although he has been here only a short time, he is able to speak some Chinese. 他虽然在中国呆的`时间不长,但他能讲些中文.

6) 限制性定语从旬前不用逗号,而非限制性定语从旬前则必须用逗号. 在下面两旬中,第一旬中的定语从旬是限制性的,第二旬中的定语从旬是非限制性的.

Everybody who goes to Chungking likes to see the place where Premier Chou worked. 来到重庆的 每一个人都要看看周总理工作过的地方.

During the War of Resistance Against Japan he went to Yenan, where he joined the Party. 抗日战争时期,他到了延安,在那里入了党.

7)被切断的直接引语的前一部分的后面用逗号. 如这一部分不是一句,后面的说明语之后亦须用逗号.

"Comrade," Chairman Mao said, "you are one of our country's great and glorious fighters. We shall always remember you." "同志,"毛主席说道, "你是我国伟大的光荣战士, 我们将永远记得你。"

如果被切断的地方本是一个句子的末尾,后面仍用逗号, 但说明语后则须用句号,而且直接引语的后一部分的开头要 大写.

"We are the people's soldiers," Chang Szu-teh said. "We must integrate ourselves with the people no matter where we are." "我们是人们的子弟兵," 张思德说,"不管走到那里,我们一定要和人民打成一片。"

23. 3 分号(;) 表示比逗号较长的停顿.

He takes much exercise; he is getting stronger and stronger. 他经常运动,身体越来越壮.

Practise Marxism, and not revisionism; unite, and don't split; be open and aboveboard, and don't intrigue and conspire. 要搞马列主义,不要搞修正主义; 要团结,不要分裂; 要光明正大,不要搞阴谋诡计.

Class One will come back tomorrow; Class Three will stay in the factory another week. 一班明天 回来, 三班还要在工厂再呆一个星期.

23. 4 **冒号** (:) 表示比分号较长的停顿. 通常用在不用引号的引语之前,或用来列举事物和解释前文.

The Tachai people say: Difficulties are paper tigers. 大寨人说: 困难是纸老虎.

Marx studied foreign languages with a clear purpose: to use them as a weapon in the class struggle. 马克思学习外语有一个明确的目的: 把它作为阶级斗争的武器.

[注一] 在现代英语中,直接引语前大半用逗号.在汉语中直接引语前则 一律用冒号.

[注二] 汉语的冒号表示提示语后的停顿, 如 "各位同志:"。但在英语中则通常用逗号, 如 "Comrades,"。

23. 5 句号(.) 表示一句话完了之后的停顿.

Knowledge begins with practice. 认识从实践始.

The philosophy of the Communist Party is the philosophy of struggle. 共产党的哲学就是斗爭的哲

11/2

- [注] 注意汉语的句号是一个小圆圈(。), 切勿与英语的句号混用。
 - 23. 6 问号(?) 表示一句问话完了之后的停顿。

What is your name? 你叫什么名字?

Where do you live? 你住在什么地方?

23.7 惊叹号(!) 表示一个感叹句完了以后的停顿. 用在感叹句的句末或感叹词的后面,也可用于表达情感的句子或词的后面.

How great and glorious our Party is! 我们的党是 多么伟大而又光荣啊!

Long live the People's Republic of China! 中华人 民共和国万岁!

What a fine day! 多好的天啊!

- **23.** 8 引号 ("") 表示文中的直接引语. (例句见 **23.2** 中的 7))
- **23.** 9 **破折号** (——) 在文中表示后面有解释,也表示意思的进展。

The Hunan-Kweichow railroad runs westward from Chuchow in Hunan province to Kweiyang in Kweichow province — a distance of over 630 kilometres. 湘桂铁路从湖南株洲往西直到贵州的贵阳,全长六百三十公里.

The Chinese Government welcomes your visit—your visit to our country. 中国政府欢迎你们的访问——(欢迎) 你们到我们国家的访问.

The old folk in the Home of Respect for the Aged have got everything they need — good food, warm

clothes, comfortable beds. 敬老院老人们什么都有——美好的食物,保暖的衣服,舒适的床铺.

23. 10 **连字号** (-) 比破折号短,用来连接复合词的各部分.如:

Marxism-Leninism-Mao Tsetung Thought 马克思主义、列宁主义、毛泽东思想

comrade-in-arms 战友

commander-in-chief 总司令

a five-year plan 五年计划 (单说"五年"则是 five years, 用复数)

nineteenth-century literature 十九世纪的文学 (单说"十九世纪"则是 the nineteenth century, 中间不用连字号)

附 录

I. 常用不规则动词表

动词原形	过去式	过去分词	
arise [ə'raiz]	arose [ə'rouz]	arisen [əˈrizn] 起来	
awake [ə'weik]	awoke [ə'wouk]	awoke, awaked 醒	
be [bi:]	was [wɔz],were [wə:]	been [bi:n] 是	
bear [bsə]	bore [bo:]	born [bo:n] 出生	
		borne 携带	
beat [bi:t]	beat	beaten [bi:tn] 打	
become [bi'kʌm]	became [bi'keim]	become 变	
begin [bi'gin]	began [bi'gæn]	begun [bi'gʌn] 开始	
bend [bend]	bent [bent]	bent 弯曲	
bind [baind]	bound [baund]	bound 缚扎	
bite [bait]	bit [bit]	bit, bitten ['bitn] 咬	
bleed [bli:d]	bled [bled]	bled 流血	
blow [blou]	blew [blu:]	blown [bloun] 吹	
break [breik]	broke [brouk]	broken ['broukn] 破	
breed [bri:d]	bred [bred]	bred 培养	
bring [brin]	brought [bro:t]	brought 带来	
build [bild]	built [bilt]	built 建筑	
burn [bə:n]	burnt [bə:nt]	burnt 燃烧	
burst [bə:st]	burst	burst 爆发	
buy [bai]	bought [bo:t]	bought 买	
cast [kq:st]	cast	cast 抛,掷	
catch [kæt]]	caught [ko:t]	caught 捉	
	×		

choose [t]u:z]	chose [t]ouz]	chosen ['tfouzn] 选择
cling [klin]	clung [klaŋ]	clung 依附
clothe [klou8]	clothed	clothed, clad [klæd] 使穿
		上
come [kam]	came [keim]	come 来
cost [kost]	cost	cost 值, 花费
creep [kri:p]	crept [krept]	crept 爬
cut [kat]	cut	cut 割
deal [di:l]	dealt [delt]	dealt 分配,对付
dig [dig]	dug [dng]	dug 掘
do [du:]	did [did]	done [dʌn] 作
draw [dro:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [dro:n] 拉
dream [dri:m]	dreamed [dri:md]	dreamed 梦
	dreamt [dremt]	dreamt 梦
drink	drank [dræŋk]	drunk [drʌŋk] 喝
drive	drove	driven ['drivn] 驱, 赶,
		驾驶
dwell	dwelt	dwelt 住
eat	ate [et]	eaten ['i:tn] 吃
fall [fo:l]	fell [fel]	fallen ['fo:ln] 落下
feed [fi:d]	fed	fed 喂
feel	felt	felt 觉得
fight [fait]	fought [fo:t]	fought 战斗
find [faind]	found [faund]	found 发现
flee	fled	fled 逃走
fling	flung	flung 投,掷
fly	flew [flu:]	flown [floun] 3
forbid [fə'bid]	forbade [fə'beid]	forbidden [fə'bidn] 禁止
forget [fə'get]	forgot [fə'gət]	forgotten [fəˈgɔtn] 忘记
forgive [fə'giv]	forgave [fə'geiv]	forgiven [fəˈgivn] 饶恕
	•	385

		C FIC
freeze	froze [frouz]	frozen [ˈfrouzn] 冻结
get	got	got 得到
give	gave	given ['givn] 给
go	went	gone [gon] 去
grow [grou]	grew [gru:]	grown [groun] 生长
hang	hanged	hanged 绞死
	hung	hung 挂
hav e	had	had 有
hear	heard [həːd]	heard 听
hide	hid	hid, hidden 藏
hit	hit	hit 打中
hold [hould]	held	held 盛,持
hurt	hurt	hurt 损伤
keep	kept	kept 保持
kneel [ni:l]	knelt [nelt]	knelt 跪
know	knew [nju:]	known [noun] 知道
lay	laid [leid]	laid 放
lead	led	led 领导
lean	leaned, leant [lent]	leaned, leant 倚
leap	leaped, leapt [lept]	leaped, leapt
learn [lə:n]	learned, learnt	learned, learnt 学习
leave [li:v]	left	left 离开
lend	lent	lent 借给
let	let	let ik
lie [lai]	lay [lei]	lain [lein] 躺
light	lighted, lit [lit]	lighted, lit 点着
lose [lu:z]	lost	lost 失去
make	made	made 作, 做
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant 意欲
meet	met	met 遇见

overcome	overcame	overcome 克服
overthrow	overthrew	overthrown 推翻
pay	paid [peid]	paid 付
put	put	put 放下
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red] 读
ride	rode [roud]	ridden ['ridn] 骑
ring	rang [ræŋ]	rung [raŋ] 响
rise	rose [rouz]	risen [ˈrizn] 起床
run	ran	run 跑
saw [so:]	sawed	sawed, sawn 锯
say [sei]	said [sed]	said 说
see	saw [so:]	seen 看见
seek	sought [so:t]	sought 投
sell 🚗	sold	sold 卖
send	sent	sent 送
set	set	set 安放
shake	shook [ʃuk]	shaken ['ʃeikn] 摇动
shave	shaved	shaved, shaven ['seivn]
		刮脸
shine	shone [jon]	shone 发光
shoot [ʃuːt]	shot	shot 射击
show [∫ou]	showed [joud]	showed, shown [joun] 指
		示,表明
shrink	shrank	shrunk 收缩
shut	shut	shut 关闭
sing	sang	sung 唱
sink	sank	sunk 沉
sit	sat	sat 坐
sleep	slept	slept 睡
slide	slid	slid 滑动

sow [sou]	sowed	sowed, sown [soun] 播种
speak	spoke	spoken 说话
speed	sped	sped 急行
spell	spelled, spelt	spelled, spelt 拼写
spend	spent	spent 花费
spin	spun	spun 纺
spit	spat	spat 唾
split	split	split 分裂
spread [spred]	spread	spread 展开
spring	sprang	sprung 跳
stand	stood [stud]	stood 站
steal	stole	stolen 偷
strike	struck	struck, stricken ['strikn]
		打
swear [swsə]	swore [swo:]	sworn 发誓
sweep	swept	swept 扫
swim	swam	swum 游泳
swing	swung	swung 搖摆
take	took	taken 拿
teach	taught [to:t]	taught 教
tear [tsə]	tore [to:]	torn 撕
tell	told [tould]	told 告诉
think	thought $[\theta o:t]$	thought 想
throw	threw [θru:]	thrown [Oroun] 拋
tread [tred]	trod	trodden ['trodn] 践踏
understand	understood	understood 了解
[ˌʌndəˈstænd]	[buts'cbna,]	
wake	woke, waked	waken, waked 醒
wear [wsə]	wore [wo:]	worn 穿
weave	wove	woven ['wouvn] 织

wept wept 哭泣 weep win won [wan] 得胜 won wind [waind] wound [waund] wound 缠绕 write [rait] written ['ritn] wrote [注一] 助动词和惰态动词只有过去式: 动词原形 过去式 should shall 将要 将要,应该 将要, 愿意 will 将要,愿意 would can 能、可以,可能 could 能,可以,可能 may 可以,也许 might 可以,也许 must, had to 必须, 一定 must 必须,一定 [注二] 从词形变化来看,不规则动词可以分为下列四类: 第一类:内部元音改变.如: break broken broke get got get wear wore worn 第二类: 末尾辅音改变. 如: burn burnt burnt make made made 第三类: 词形没有改变, 如: let let let put put put 第四类: 词形完全改变, 如: go went gone [注三]] 从变化形式异同来看,不规则动词也可分为下列四类: 第一类: 三种形式完全不同. 如: begin began begun dodid done given give gave 第二类: 过去式与过去分词形式相同. 如: buy bought bought find found found sit sat 第三类:动词原形和过去分词形式相同,如: come came come run ran run

第四类: 三种形式完全相同. 如:

let

let spread let

spread

spread

II. 英语语音

一、英语语音基本知识

- 1 香素 音素是语音的最小单位. 英语共有音素 48 个。
- 2 元香和辅酬 发声时声带振动,气流通过口腔时不受舌、颚、齿、唇等发音器官的阻碍的音素,叫做元音.英语元音音素共20个.发声时,有时声带振动,有时声带不振动,但气流通过口腔时一律受到各种不同方式和不同程度的阻碍,这样的音素,叫做辅音.英语辅音音素共28个.(例见6)
- 3 单元香和双元香 元音有单元音和双元音的区别. 发单元音时, 发音器官固定在一个部位上, 如 6 中的 1-12 号元音;发双元音时, 发音器官由一个部位向另一个部位滑动, 如 6 中的 13-20 号元音.

单元音又有长元音和短元音两种. 发长元音时历时较长 (例见6中的 1,5,7,9,11号元音),发短元音时历时较短 (例见6中的 2,3,4,6,8,10,12号元音). 两者长度的比例约为 2 比 1.

- 4 浊香和清香 有的音素发声时,声带振动,叫做浊音.有的音素发声时,声带不振动,叫做清音.元音都是浊音.辅音有清辅音和浊辅音的区别.例见6的辅音表.
- 5 **辅**番 辅音根据发音部位可分为双唇音 (如[p] [b] [m]), 唇齿音 (如 [f] [v]), 舌尖齿背音 (如 [θ] [δ]), 舌端齿龈后部音 (如 [tf] [dʒ] [f] [3]), 舌尖齿龈音 (如 [tf] [d] [n] [f] [s] [z]), 舌前硬颚音(如[f]), 舌后软颚音 (如 [k] [g] [g]), 声门麽擦音 (如 [h])等.

辅音根据发音方法又可分为爆破音 (如 [p] [b] [t] [d] [k] [g]), 摩擦音 (如 [f] [v] [θ] [δ] [s] [z] [ʃ] [ʒ]), 破擦音 (如 [tʃ] [dʒ] [ts] [dz] [tr] [dr]), 鼻音 (如 [m] [n] [ŋ]), 舌边音 (如 [l]) 等.

6 看标 把音素记录下来的符号叫做音标,每个音标代表一个音

素,本书一律采用国际音标,音标须写在方括号[]内,以**免和字母相** 混,现将记录英语音素的音标列表如下;

1) 元番

,	[i:]	[i]	[e]	[æ]	[a:]
	· 1	2,	3	4	5
	[c]	[5:]	[u]	[u:]	[٨]
	6	7	8	9	10
	[əː]	[e]	[ei]	[əu]	[ai]
	11	12	13	14	15
	[au]	[ic]	[ei]	[ea]	[uə]
	16	17	18	19	20
2	補音				
	[p]	[b]	[t]	[d]	[k]
	[g]	[m]	[n]	[ŋ]	[1]
	[f]	[v]	[θ]	[8]	[s]
	[z]	[[]]	[3]	[r]	[h]
	[tʃ]	[dʒ]	[ts]	[dz]	[tr]
	[dr]	[w]	[j]		

- 7 **智节** 含有一个响亮音素的声音片段,叫做一个**智节** 英语里的元音音素都是响亮的音素·所以一般来说凡含有一个元音音素的声音 片段都构成一个音节
- 8 单智节词、双替节词与多贯节词 由一个音节构成的词, 叫做单音节词, 如 yes, no, work.

由两个音节构成的词, 叫做双音节词, 如 Chi-na, Eng-lish, work-er, 由三个或三个以上音节构成的词, 叫做多音节词, 如 so-cial-ism, com-mu-nist, ag-ri-cul-ture.

9 **重读香节与非重读香节** 英语的词如有一个以上的**音节,则有**的音节须读得重而清楚,叫做重读音节;有的读得轻而含糊,叫做非重读音节.通常一个词只有一个重读音节.

单音节词只有一个音节, 在单独读音时须重读,

双音节词和多音节词中的重读音节用重音符号"1"标出,重音符号 放在重读音节的左上角,如:

'China ['tsaine]

cor'rect [ka'rekt]

单音节词虽由重读音节构成,但因为只有一个音节,无须用重音符号标出.

10 成节看 构成一个音节的响亮音素, 叫做成节音, 前已说过, 元音音素都是响亮音素, 故都是成节音, 此外, 还有三个响亮的辅音音素 [1] [m] [n], 能和它前面的另一辅音构成一个音节, 在这种情况下, 这三个辅音也是成节音, 这样的音节都不重读, 故都是非重读音节, 如:

capital ['kæpitl] ([tl] 是一个音节)

suddenly ['sʌdnli] ([dn] 是一个音节)

imperialism [im'piəriəlizm] ([zm] 是一个音节)

11 句子重**音** 一个句子中的词有的重读,有的不重读.须重读的词,即有句子重音.一般说来,实词(某些代词除外)有句子重音,虚词无句子重音.如:

We are 'workers. We 'work 'hard for 'socialism.

12 语调 我们说话或朗读时声调的抑扬, 叫做语调. 英语语调大体可分为升调和降调两种.

语调图解时,通常用两条平行的横线表示人声的音域. 短线表示有 句子重音的音节,黑点表示无句子重音的音节,曲线表示升调或降调。

13 降调 在用降调的语句中,第一个重读音节在音域中的位置最高,以后各重读音节的位置则依次一个比一个低. 最后一个重读音节下降. 第一个重读音节前的各非重读音节的位置低而较平. 各重读音节间的非重读音节与其前面的重读音节大体一样高,最后一个重读音节之后的非重读音节也是低而平. 如:

英语中的陈述句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句、祈使句和威叹句都用降调.

We work hard for socialism.

14 升调 和降调一样,在用升调的语句中的第一个重读音节在音域中位置最高,以后各重读音节的位置依次降低.第一个重读音节前的各非重读音节的位置低而平.各重读音节间的非重读音节与其前面的重读音节大体一样高,但最后的重读音节或非重读音节则须上升.如:

Is this a pen? Are you a worker?

英语中的一般疑问句和反意疑问句(表示不肯定时)用升调·语句中间的停顿往往也用升调·

二、英语语音发音部位说明

1) 元番

1 [i:]

前、高、不圆唇、长元音

- a) 舌尖抵下齿, 舌前部抬得较高, 但比汉语普通话"衣"稍低。
- b) 唇形扁, 牙床开得较窄, 但比汉语普通话"衣"稍宽.

2 [i]

前、高、不圆唇、短元音

- a) 舌尖抵下齿, 舌前部抬得较高.
- b) 唇形稍扁, 牙床比 [i:] 较宽, 比 [e] 较窄。
- c) 口腔肌肉放松.
- d) 与汉语普通话"衣"相近. 但音甚短.

3 [e]

前、半高、不圆唇、短元音

- a) 舌尖抵下齿.
- b) 舌前部稍抬起, 但比 [i] 低.
- c) 唇形中常, 牙床开得比 [i] 稍宽.
- d) 汉语普通话无此音. 与上海话"来"字的韵母很相似。

4 [æ]

前、低、不圆唇、短元音

a) 舌尖抵下齿, 舌前的后部最高, 前面部分降得很低, 随下颚下垂

成斜坡形.

- b) 嘴唇向两旁平伸, 开口程度比 [e] 大得多.
- c) 汉语普通话无此音·

5 [q:]

后、低、不圆唇、长元音

张口平舌,和普通话"啊"相似,但舌位比"啊"稍后,舌尖离下齿。

6 [o]

后、低、圆唇、短元音

- a) 整个舌身低, 舌尖离下齿,
- b) 牙床大开, 唇形圆, 但不突出.
- c) 发 [a:] 音加圆唇即可得此音.
- d) 汉语普通话无此音。

7 [5:]

后、半低、圆唇、长元音

舌位比元音 [2] 稍高,舌尖离下齿,唇收得更圆,更小,向前突出. 汉语普通话无此音。

8 [u]

后、高、圆唇、短元音

- a) 舌位比汉语普通话"乌"稍低,稍后. 舌尖离下齿。
- b) 双唇收圆, 稍向前突出.
- c) 口腔肌肉松.

9 [u:]

后、高、圆唇、长元音

- a) 舌后部抬得很高, 舌尖离下齿.
- b) 双唇突出, 收得很圆很小.
- c) 与汉语普通话"乌"相近.

10 [A]

中、低、不圆唇、短元音

- a) 舌中部的较后部分稍隆起, 但比 [ə] 低。
- b) 舌尖离下齿, 舌端两侧触下齿,

- c) 双唇向两旁平伸, 口开得很大, 和 [æ] 相似.
- d) 从元音 [ɔː] 出发,将圆唇改为扁唇,可得此音。
- e) 汉语普通话无此音.

11 [a:]

中、半高、不圆唇、长元音

- a) 舌身平放, 舌中部稍抬起, 比元音 [ə] 稍高。
- b) 唇形扁平, 牙床开得很窄.
- c) 与汉语普通话"鹅"相近, 但比"鹅"稍高稍前。

12 [ə]

中、半低、不圆唇、短元音

和汉语普通话"什么""好了"中的"么"和"了"里的韵母的发音相似, 但出现在英语词末的[ə] 要比汉语普通话的"么""了"的韵母长些.

13 [ei]

双元音

开始部分为 [e], 结尾部分为 [i], 从 [e] 滑到 [i] 时下颚必须稍稍上 抬, 使舌位随之稍稍提高, 与汉语普通话"黑"的韵母相近。

14 [əu]

双元音

- a) 开始部分是中、半低、不圓唇、短元音 [ə]。
- b) 由开始部分滑向 [u].
- c) 与汉语普通话"欧"相近.

15 [ai]

双元音

- a) 开始部分是前、低、不圆唇、短元音. 开口程度大,和汉语普通话"啊"相似,但舌尖须抵下齿.
 - b) 先发汉语普通话"啊", 然后下顎上移, 向 [i] 滑动。
 - c) 与汉语普通话的"啊+衣(短)"相近.

16 [au]

双元音

开始部分和汉语普通话"啊"相似,但舌尖须抵下齿. 发完后滑向[u]。

17 [oi]

双元音

双元音 [əi] 的第一个成分在 [ə] 和 [ə:] 之间, 发完后滑向 [i].

18 [iə]

双元音

由间滑向[9].

19 [εə]

双元音

第一个成分是前元音,**舌**位高低在 [e] 与 [æ] 之间. 发此音时舌尖 触下齿,发完后滑向 [ə].

20 [uə]

双元音

由 [u] 滑向 [ə].

2) 辅音

双唇爆破音 [p]

- a) 双唇紧闭.
- b) 上下唇突然分开,气流冲出口腔, 送气强,清音。
- c) 与汉语普通话"旁"的声母相近,

[b]

- a) 部位同 [p].
- b) 与汉语普通话"包"的声母相近, 但"包"的声母是不吐气清音,而 [b] 是浊音.

舌尖齿龈爆破音 [t]

- a) 舌尖端紧贴上齿龈.
- b) 舌尖端突然离开上齿龈,气流冲出口腔. 送气强,清音。
- c) 与汉语普通话"塔"的声母相近.

[d]

部位同[t]. 与汉语普通话"德"的声母相近. 但[d] 是浊音。

舌后软顎爆破音 [k]

a) 舌后部上抬,紧贴软颚.

- b) 舌后部突然离开软顎, 气流冲出口腔, 送气强, 清音.
- c) 与汉语普通话"克"的声母相近.

[g]

部位同 [k], 与汉语普通话"个"的声母相近, 但 [g] 是浊音,

唇齿摩擦音 [f]

- a) 下唇轻触上齿, 中间留空隙.
- b) 送气, 清音.
- c) 与汉语普通话"福"的声母相近.

[v]

部位同[f]. 浊音. 汉语普通话无此音.

舌尖齿背摩擦音 [θ]

- a) 舌尖轻触上齿,中间留缝隙.
- b) 清香.
- c) 汉语普通话无此音.

[8]

部位同[8]. 浊音. 汉语普通话无此音.

舌尖齿龈摩擦音 [s]

- a) 舌尖上抬, 靠近上齿龈,
- b) 清音.
- c) 与汉语普通话"斯"的声母相近,

[Z]

部位同[s]. 浊音. 汉语普通话无此音.

舌端齿龈后部摩擦音 [ʃ]

- a) 舌尖和舌端靠近上齿龈较后部分, 舌身上抬, 靠近上顎, 形成狭 长的通道, 气流由此通过. 双唇向前突出, 略成方形.
 - b) 清音.
 - c) 与汉语普通话"是"的声母相近. 但舌须稍向前平展些,

[3]

部位同[J]. 浊音. 与汉语普通话"日"的声母相近. 但舌须稍向前平展些。

舌端齿龈后部破擦音 [tf]

- a) 舌尖舌端抬起,紧抵上齿龈后部 (与 [t] 很相近,但比 [t] 的部位较后。) 口腔通路完全阻塞。 发出极轻微的爆破后,立即转为摩擦音 [f].
 - b) 清音.
 - c) 与汉语普通话"吃"的声母相近, 但舌须稍向前平展些,

[dz]

部位同[t]. 出声, 浊音. 与汉语普通话"纸"的声母相近. 但舌须稍向前平展些.

舌端齿龈后部座擦音 [r]

- a) 舌身低, 舌前部两侧向上卷, 略成凹形, 舌尖举向上齿龈后部.
- b) 双唇突出, 气流由舌与硬顎间泄出, 浊音,
- c) 与汉语普通话"瑞"的声母相近。

声门摩擦音 [b]

- a) 声门大开, 气流通过时有轻微振动.
- b) 口腔部位不定, 随其后面的元音而变化. 清音.
- c) 与汉语普通话"黑"的声母相近, 但发 [h] 时不可使小舌振动.

舌前硬顎浊辅音 [j]

- a) 舌前向硬顎举得极高,通道极窄,气流通过时有轻微摩擦.浊音.
- b) 这个音是过渡音. 一经发出, 立刻向它后面的元音滑动.
- c) 与汉语普通话"衣"(短)相近.

舌后软顎圆唇音 [w]

- a) 舌后向软顎举得很高.
- b) 上下唇收得很小,向前突出,气流通过时,双唇有轻微摩擦. 浊 音.
 - c) 一经滑出, 立刻向它后面的元音滑动。
 - d) 与汉语普通话"外"的声母相近.

舌边音 [1]

- a) 舌尖抵上齿龈.
- b) 气流由舌两侧泄出. 浊音.

c) 与汉语普通话"李"的声母相近.

双唇鼻音 [m]

双唇紧闭,气流从鼻腔泄出。与汉语普通话"莫"的声母相仿,

舌端齿龈鼻音 [n]

舌尖端平伸上举,紧贴上齿酿,口腔通路完全闭塞,气流从鼻腔泄 出,与汉语普通话"那"的声母相近。

舌后软顎鼻音 [g]

舌后上举与软颚接触,口腔通路完全闭塞. 气流从鼻腔泄出.

舌端齿龈破擦音 [ts]

舌端贴住齿龈,略为下降,气流泄出口腔.

[dz]

部位同 [ts], 浊音.

舌端齿龈后部破擦音 [tr]

- a) 舌身作发 [r] 状.
- b) 舌尖贴在齿龈后部.
- c) 气流冲破阻碍发短促的 [t] 后, 立即发 [r].

[dr]

- a) 部位同 [tr].
- b) 气流冲破阻碍发短促的 [d] 后, 立即发 [r].

三、读音规则

1 读**晋规则** 英语字母共有 26 个,它们各有其**君名**,或称"字母 表音";如 a 的音名为 [ei]. 但在词中拼写形式中,各字母或字母组合 均可读为几种不同的音. 指导我们如何根据拼写形式决定字母的读音 的规则,叫做读音规则.(以下各节只说明一般情况)

2 重读音节的四种类型

字	开 音 节		ent de ille	r 音节	re 音节
母	绝 对	相对	闭音节	L To b	IC H
а	a -↑	name 名字	man 人	farm 农场 farm-ing 耕作	care 小心
е	be 是	Pete 彼得	red 红	her 她的	here 这里
i	I, my Chi-na 中国	nine 儿 nine-ty 儿十	big 大	girl 女孩	fire 火
0	no 不	note 注意	net 不	for 为 for-ward 向前	more 较多
u	stu-dent 学生	use 用 use-ful 有用的	sun 太阳 sun-ny 阳光多的	turn 转	pure 纯 sure 肯定

3 绝对开音节 以发音的元音字母结尾的重读音节, 叫做绝对开音节, 绝对开音节中的元音字母读字母表音。

字	日	读音	举例
а	1	[ei]	a, 'labour 劳动, 'paper 纸, 'later 后来
6	9	[i:]	be, we, me, he, she, 'Pe'king, 'evening, 'recently 近来
i和	пу	[ai]	I, my, try 试图, 'China, 'Chi'nese, why, sky 天空, by
C)	[əu]	no, so 如此, 所以, go, 'over, 'socialism 社会主义, 'socialist 社会主义的
·	ı	[ju:]	¹student

4 相对开晋节 以"元音字母土辅音字母 (r 除外) 十不发音的字

母 eⁿ结尾的重读音节, 叫做相对开音节. 相对开音节中的元音字母也读字母表音.

宇母	读音	举 例
a	[ei]	name 名字, face 脸, 面貌, take, same 同样的, make, brave 勇敢的, save 敦, place 地方
e	[i:]	Pete 彼得
i	[ai]	nice, line 线, 路线, quite 十分, like 喜欢, side 边, life 生活, time 时间, drive 驾驶, while 当
0	[uc]	whole 全, home 家, role 角色
u	[ju:]	use 用

5 闭音节 以辅音字母结尾的重读音节,叫做闭音节. 闭音节中的元音字母读短音.

字母	读音	举 例
a	[æ]	am, man 人, and, at, flag 族, can 館, that, plan 计划, shall, glad 喜欢的, back, an, 'capital 首都, 資本, 'tractor 拖拉机, 'happy 幸福的, 'language 语 言, 'factory 工厂, 'badly 厉害地, 严重地, 'active 积' 极的, 'January 一月
e	[e]	pen 钢笔, let 让, ten, red, yes, well, best 最好的, help 帮助, tell 告诉, next 下一个, send 送去, when, 'general 总的, to'gether 一起, for'get 忘记, 'never 永不, 'enter 进入, fetch 取, him'self, rest 休息, 'yesterday 昨天, 'member 成员, De'cember 十二月, then 于是, 那时, 'centre 中心
i和y	[i]	it, is, with, big, his, its, in, will, this, dig 楓, still 仍旧, pig 猪, did, if, thing 东西, 'fifty 五十, 'quickly 快, po'litical 政治的, 'difficult 难, ful'fil 完成, 'picture 画片, 'finish 作完, 'children 小孩的复数, 'system 系统, 制度

o	[9]	not, long 长、久、song 微, of, lot, on, stop 停止, 'commune 公社. 'communism 共产主义, 'comrade, 'fellow 跟随, 遵循, 'common 共同的, 'hospital 医院, from 从, 'doctor 医生
น	[A]	sun 太阳,up 向上,起来,us, but, must. run 跑, much 多。'under 在…下,pro'duction 生产,'uncle 叔,伯,lunch 午餐,'hundred 百,'suffer 忍受, 'suddenly 突然,rush 冲,con'struction 建设

r 晋节 以"元音字母+r 或 r 与另一个辅音字母"结尾的重读 音节, 叫做 r 音节, r 音节中的元音字母和后面的 r 一起读长音.

字母	读音	. 举 例
ar	[a:]	far 远, farm 农场, 'farmer 农民, 'party 政党, star 星, hard 努力地 硬, 难, 'army 军, yard 庭院
er	[əː]	her, 'certainly 一定, 'service 服务
įr	[əː]	first 第一, girl 女孩, 'thirty 三十
or	[၁:]	or, for, im'portant 重要的, 'forward 向前, 'morning 早上, 上午, born 诞生
ur	[əː]	turn 转, burn 燃烧, hurt 伤, 'nursery 托儿所

7 re **晋节** 以"元音字母十一re"结尾的重读音节,叫做 re 音节. re 音节多数读以 [9] 结尾的双元音.

字母	读音	举 例
are	[69]	care 小心, 'careful 小心的
ere	[si]	here 这里
ire	[aiə]	fire 火, tired 疲倦
ore	[၁:] [၁ə]	be'fore 在…前
	[juə]	pure 纯洁的
ure	[uə]	sure 肯定

8 元香字母 a 的字母组合

字母组合	读音	举例
ai	[ei]	train 火车,训练,grain 粮食,a'gain,a'gainst, raise 养,提高,aid 援助,pain 痛苦
air	[69]	chair 椅, 'chairman 主席 re'pair 修理
al +辅 音字母	[3:]	all, 'also, talk 谈话, 'always 常常, walk 走路, 散步, call 呼叫
ance	[a:ns]	chance 机会, dance 跳舞
ask	[aːsk]	ask 问, 请求, task 任务
ass	[a:s]	class, pass 递, 传
ast	[aːst]	last 最后的, 前一, fast 快, 'master 精通, past 过去, 过去的
.1.	[a: ð]	'father, 'rather 颇
- ath	[a:θ]	bath 洗澡, path 道路
au	[3:]	cause 事业, 'August 八月
augh	[3:]	taught, caught, daughter 女儿
aw	[3:]	law 法律
wa 在闭 音节中	[wo]	was, want 想要, wash 洗
war	[wa:]	war 战争, warm 温暖的

9 元臂字母 e 的字母组合

字母组合	读音	举 例
ea	[iː]	lead 领导, 'leader, 'leadership, teach, 'teacher, leap 跃, read, mean 意谓, team 队, please 请, in'crease 增加
ear	[ei]	ear 耳, hear 听, clear 清楚的, near 靠近, beard 胡子
	[9:]	'early 早, learn 学习, heard
词尾 -ed 在浊音后	[d]	lived, 'studied
词尾 -ed 在清音后	[t]	worked, 'finished
词尾 -ed 在d,t之后	[id]	needed 需要, wanted
· ee	[i:]	feel 感觉, week, keep 保持, three, steel 钢, 锻炼, see, seen, been, sweep 扫, sleep 睡, seem 似乎
cer	[ei]	volun'teer 志愿军, engi'neer 工程师

10 元**晋字母 i 和 y 的字母组合** (y 作元音字母时, 和 i 一样)

字母组合	读音	举例
ie	[i:]	field 田, piece 张, 块, a'chieve 取得, 达到
ie 在词尾	[ai]	die 死, lie 躺
igh	[ai]	right 右, 对, high 高, night 夜, fight 战斗
ild	[aild]	child 儿童, wild 野的
ind	[aind]	kind 种类, find 发现, 找着, mind 头脑
ye在词尾	[ai]	'good-'bye 再见

11 元晉字母 0 的字母组合

字母组合	读音	举 例
oa	[əu]	boat 船, road 路, coat 上衣
oar	[3:]	board 木板
oe	[əu]	toe 脚趾, hoe 锄
oi 和 oy	[ɔi]	oil 油, joy 欢乐, point 点, boy 男孩
old	[blue]	old, hold 握, 举, cold 冷, told
o 在 n, m, v, th 之前	[۸]	son 儿子, done, month 月份, 'Monday 星期一, ton 吨, front 前面, some 一些, come 来, be'come 变成. 'something 某物, 'somebody 某人, love 爱, a'bove 在上, 高于, 'mother 母亲, 'brother 兄弟, 'other 另, 别, a'nother 另一个, 又一个, 'nothing 无物
00 在一 般情况下	[u:]	soon 不久, too 也, room 房间, noon 中午, food 食物
oo在k之 前,有时在 t,d 之前	[u]	took, cook 炊事员, book 书, good 好, foot 脚
ost	[əust]	most 最, 最多, post 邮寄
our	[auə]	our, hour 小肚
	[au]	how, now, town 城镇, down 向下
ow	[əu]	'follow 跟随,遵照,to'morrow 明天,low 低,'window 窗户,know,show
wor	[wə:]	work, 'worker, world 世界, word 词, worse 较坏

12 元音字母 u 的字母组合

字母组合	读音	浴 例
u 在 ll 之 前, 在 f, b, p 之后	[u]	full 满, pull 拉, bull 中
u 在 sh 之前,在f b, p 之后	[u]	push 推, bush 灌木
r, l, j 等 加 u 的 开音节	[uː]	rule 统治, true 真实的, blue 蓝色的, June 六月

13 非**重读音节的读音规则** 英语词的非重读音节中的元音 字母一般弱读. 元音字母 a, o, u 一般弱读作 [ə], 元音字母 e, i, y 一般弱读作 [i]. 如:

 China
 (a 读作 [ə])
 today
 (o 读作 [ə])

 decide
 (e 读作 [i])
 autumn
 (u 读作 [ə])

 English
 (i 读作 [i])
 twenty
 (y 读作 [i])

此外, ar, or, our, ure, er 等字母组合在非重读音节中读 [o]; ay, ey, a+除 r 外的辅音字母+e, 读作 [i]. 如:

leopard (ar 读作 [ə]) labour (our 读作 [ə]) worker (er 读作 [ə]) Sunday (ay 读作 [i]) picture (ure 读作 [ə]) valley (ey 读作 [i]) monitor (or 读作 [ə]) comrade (a 读作 [i])

注意下列非重读音节的读音规则:

- 1) -tion 读作 [ʃən], 如: nation [ˈneiʃən] 民族. 以 -tion 结尾的词, -tion 的前一音节为重读音节. 如有三个以上的音节,则重读音节前第二个音节有次重音,次重音符号是 "₁",如 composition 应读作[ˌkɔmpəˈziʃən].但 -tion 前如是 s,则发[tʃən],如question [ˈkwestʃən].
- 2) -sion 读作 [ʃən], 如: mission [ˈmiʃən] 使命, 或读作 [ʒən], 如 precision [priˈsiʒən] 精密. 其余规则与 -tion 全同.

14 几个辅言字母和辅音字母组合的读音规则

字 母 和 字母组合	读音	浴 例
c 在 e, i, y 之前	[s]	nice, face, 'city 城市, 'centre 中心, 'certainly 一定, 'bicycle 自行车
c 在 a, o, u 和辅音 字母之前	[k]	can, catch 捉, can'teen 食堂, cold, dis'cuss 讨论, class, clothes 衣服
ch	[tʃ]	'China, teach, 'teacher, child, change 变化
ck	[k]	'quickly 快, back 回, 背
dge	[d3]	pledge 保证,judge 判断
-ge 在词 尾	[dʒ]	change 变化, 'language 语言, 'village 村, age 时代, 年纪, page 页
kn在词首	[n]	know 知道, knife 小刀
ng	[ŋ]	'morning 上午, 'evening 晚上, song 敬, young 年轻的, wrong 错的, 'interesting 有趣的, 'teaching 教学, 'meeting 会议, 'going, 'coming, stopping, 'studying
nk	[ŋk]	think 想, thank 感谢
ph	[f]	'physical 体力的,'telephone 电话,'paragraph 段落
qu	[kw]	'quickly 快, quite 十分, 'question 问题
s在清音后	[s]	works, stops, 'students, books
s在浊音后	[z]	boys, girls, 'feachers, 'workers, stands, years, songs, is, his, those, these
sc 在 e, i 之前	[s]	scent 香味, science 科学
şh	[ʃ]	she, English, shall, finish 作完
th 在 虚 词和一部 分代词中	[8]	with, the, this, that, these, those, they, their, them, though 虽然, al though 虽然, then 然后

th 在实 词中	[θ]	three 三, youth 青年, think 思想, bath 洗澡
tch	[tʃ]	catch 捉, fetch 取
wh在o前	[h]	who, whom, whose, whole 整个的
wh 在其 他情况下	[w]	when 何时, where 何处, why 为何, white 白色的, wheat 小麦
wr	[r]	write 写, wrong 错误的
x 在词尾 或在清辅 音前	[ks]	six 六, box 盒, 箱, text 课文, next 下一个, 'expert 专家
x 在两元 音之间而 重音落在 后一元音	[gz]	e'xample 范例, e'xam 考试

[注] 双写辅音字母的读音与单个辅音字母相同, 如 class, difficult 困难的, spell 拼写.

15 双暂节词的读替规则

- 1) 双音节词的重音一般落在第一个音节上,如 'China, 'lesson, 'English.
- 2) 双音节分界线上如只有一个辅音字母, 这个辅音字母应划归后一音节, 前一音节即按绝对开音节读音, 如 Chi-na ['tʃainə]
- 3) 双音节分界线上如有两个辅音字母,则前一辅音字母划归前一音节,后一辅音字母划归后一音节. 重读音节按闭音节读音. 如 summer ['sʌmə] 夏天, com-mon ['kɔmən]
- 4) 词首为 a-(或 ab, ac, ad, af, al, an 等), be- re- 时, 重音在第二音节上, 如 a'bout, a'gain, a'gainst, a'head, a'long, a'go, al'ready, al'though, a'mong, ar'rive 到达, a'gree 同意, af'fair 事情, a'bove, be'fore, be'come, be'gin 开始, be'cause, be'lieve 相信, re'port 报告, re'turn 返, re'pair 修理.

16 多晉节词的读香规则

多音节词的重音多在倒数第三个音节上,重读音节中的元音字母—

般读短音. 如 'difficult 难的, 'family 家庭, po'litical 政治的, e'conomy 经济. 四音节以上的词常有次重音,多在重读音节前第二个音节上. 如 agricultural [,ægri'kʌltʃərəl] 农业的.

17 复合词的读音规则 复合词多由两个单词组成,重读音节多是第一个单词或其中原来的重读音节. 如 'chairman 主席, 'blackboard 黑板, 'classroom 教室, 'dining-room 食堂

III. 构词法

1 构词法 英语的构词方法有三: 合成 (composition), 派生 (derivation) 和转换 (conversion).

一、合成

- **2 合成** 合两个或两个以上的词而成**为一个新词,这种构词的方** 法叫做合成.
 - 3 复合名词的主要构成方式
 - 1) 名词十名词

classroom 教室, newspaper 报纸, schoolboy 中小学男学生, bookcase 书柜, worker-militia 工人民兵

- 形容词十名词 blackboard 黑板, green-house 溫室, highway 公路, social-imperialism 社会帝国主义
- 3) 动词十名词 scarecrow 稻草人, break-water 防波堤
- 4) 副词十名词 outbreak 爆发, overcoat 大衣
- 5) 代词十名词 he-goat 公山羊, she-wolf 母涯
- 6) 动词十副词

die-hard 顽固分子, break-down 崩溃, 毛病, walk out 罢工, get-together 联欢

7) 名词十介词短语 editor-in-chief 总编辑, father-in-law 岳父, comrade-in-arms 战友

4 复合形容词的主要构成方式

- 1) 名词十形容词 snow-white 雪白的, seasick 海上晕船的, colour-blind 色盲的, world-wide 全世界规模的
- 2) 形容词+形容词 = red-hot 赤热的, bitter-sweet 叉苦叉甜的, blue-green 绿里发蓝的
- 副词+形容词 ever-green 常绿的, over-sensitive 过敏的
- 4) 名词十分词 snow-covered 雪盖着的, hand-made 手工制作的, man-eating 吃人的, earth-shaking 震动世界的
- 5) 形容词十分词 ready-made 现成的, good-looking 好看的
- 6) 副词十分词 far-reaching 深远的, well-meaning 好意的, well-informed 消息灵通的
- 7) 形容词十名词 first-rate 第一流的, second-hand 旧的, 用过的, 第二手的, bare-foot 赤脚的, lower-middle 下中的
- 8) 形容词十名词十 -ed open-minded 胸襟开阔的, white-haired 白发的
- 9) 数词十名词+(-ed) two-faced 两面派的, four-cornered 有四角的, two-line (struggle) 两条路线的(斗爭), five-year (plan) 五年(计划)

- 10) 名词十名词十 -ed iron-willed 有钢铁意志的
- 5 复合代词的主要构成方式
- 1) 代词宾格或物主代词 + self (selves) himself 他自己, ourselves 我们自己
- 2) 某些不定代词 some, any, no, every + body (one, thing), 如 everyone (everybody, everything), nobody (no one, nothing)
- 6 复合动词的主要构成方式
- 1) 副词十动词 overcome 克服, uphold 支持, 主张, outgrow 因年龄增长而失去
- 2) 名词十动词 sun-bathe 行目光浴
- 7 复合副词的主要构成方式
- 1) 名词十名词 sideways 構着
- 2) 名词十副词 headfirst 头朝下
- 3) 形容词十名词 meanwhile 同时
- 4) 介词十名词 beforehand 事先

二、派生

- 8 派生 在一个单词前或后加上一个词缀,变成一个新词,这种构词的方法叫做派生。词缀有前缀和后缀两种. 加在单词前的词缀,叫前缀. 加在单词后的词缀,叫后缀.
 - 9 前缀 现将最常用的一些前缀 (按字母顺序) 举例如下: anti- 反对

anti-imperialist 反帝的, anti-American 反美的 arch- 主要的

arch-reactionary 最反动的人, arch-enemy 主要敌人 auto- 自

automobile 小汽车, autonomy 自治, autobiography 自传

bi- 双

bicycle 自行车, bilingual 用两种语言的

by- 在旁

bystander 旁观者, by-product 副产品, by-election 补缺选举, 部分选举

co- 共同

co-operation 合作, co-existence 共处, co-worker 同事

counter- 反

counter-attack 反攻, counter-revolutionary 反革命的, counter-clockwise 反时针方向的

de- 除去, 否定

demilitarize 非军事化, decentralization 分散,不集中, dethrone 废立

dis- 否定

disarmament 裁军, discover 发现, disorder 混乱, 杂乱 en-, cm- 使成为

enable 使能够, enslave 奴役, embed 埋置, 嵌入, encourage 鼓励

ex- 前

ex-soldier 退伍军人, ex-president 前任主席、总统或大学校长 extra- 外

extraordinary 非常的, 格外的, extra-curricular 课外的 for-, fore- 先, 前, 预

forward 向前, foresee 预见, forearm 前臂, foretaste 先尝, foreman 工长,工头

for- 禁, 弃

forbid 禁止, forget 忘记, forgo 放弃

hydro- 水

hydro-electric 水电的

in-, il-, im-, ir- 不, 非

informal 非正式的, incomplete 不完全的, indefinite 不定的, illegal 非法的, immoral 不道德的, irregular 不规则的 inter- 间, 相互

internationalism 国际主义, interview 会见

mal- 恶

maltreat 虐待

micro- 微`

microscope 显微镜, microfilm 微型胶片

mid- 中

midday 中午, mid-night 半夜, mid-autumn 中秋的 mis- 谭

misunderstand 误会, misuse 误用, misfortune 不幸 mono- 单一

monotonous 单调的, monochrome 单色的, monopoly 垄断, 独立, monogamy 一夫一妻制

multi- 多

multi-national 多民族的, multi-purpose 万能的

non-非,不

non-proletarian 非无产阶级的, nonsense 胡言, nonexistent 不存在的

poly-多

polysyllabic 多音节的

post- 后于

post-war 战后的, post-graduate 大学毕业后的, 研究生 pre- 先于

pre-war 战前的

pro- 赞成,亲善

pro-American 亲美的

pseudo- 伪

pseudonym 笔名, pseudo-classic 假经典著作

psycho- 心灵, 精神 psycho-analysis 精神分析

re- 重, 再, 复

re-write 重写, review 复习

semi- 华
semi-colonial 半殖民地的

sub- 下, 次

sub-continent 次大陆, subdivide 细分, 再分, subhead 小标题

super- 上,超

super-structure 上层建筑, superprofit 超额利润

sym-. syl-, syn- 同

sympathy 同情心,同國, symphony 交响乐, syllable 音节, synonym 同义词

tele- 远

telephone 电话, telescope 望远镜, television 电视

trans- 横过, 转移

transoceanic 横渡大洋的, transformation 改造, translate 翻译 tri- 三

triangle 三角形

ultra- 之外, 极, 超

ultra-violet 紫外线, ultra-leftist 极左分子

un- 不

unable 不能的, unimportant 不重要的, untrue 不真实的

uni- 一,单

uniform 划一的, unicellular 单细胞的

vice- 副

vice-chairman 副主席, vice-premier 副总理

10 名词后缀

-age 状态,集合

tonnage 吨数, marriage 婚姻, shortage 缺少, village 村庄

-al

withdrawal 撤回, revival 复兴, arrival 到达, renewal 更新-an 人

American 美国人, Italian 意大利人, 意大利语, African 非洲人

-ance, -ancy 性质, 状态

importance 重要性, significance 意义, resistance 抵抗, attendance 参加

-ant, -ent 人

assistant 助手, 助教, defendant 被告, student 学生

-archy 统治

monarchy 君主政治, anarchy 无政府状态

-ation, -ition 动作, 状态

determination 决心, industrialization 工业化, preparation 准备, competition 竞争, repetition 重复

-cide 杀

insecticide 杀虫药, suicide 自杀

-cracy 统治

democracy 民主, aristocracy 贵族政治, bureaucracy 官僚主义-craft 技巧,工艺

handicraft 手工艺, witchcraft 巫术,魔法(这些词亦可作为复合词看)

-cy, -sy (抽象名词)

intimacy 亲密, hypocrisy 伪善, bankruptcy 破产

-dom (状态, 领界)

freedom 自由, kingdom 王国

-ee (被动)

employee 雇员, nominee 被提名者

-eer 人

engineer 工程师, volunteer 志愿者

-ence, -ency (抽象名词)

dependence 依靠, 不独立, excellence 卓越, frequency 频率

-er 人, 动作者

fighter 战士, worker 工人, writer 作家, thinker 思想家, harvester 收割机

-ese 人, 语言

Chinese 中国人,中文, Japanese 日本人,日文, Hunanese 湖南人,湖南话

-ess 女性

actress 女演员, princess 公主, goddess 女神, hostess 女主人, 女乘务员(飞机上)

-ful 充满

handful 一把, armful 一抱 (这些词亦可作为复合词看)

-graph 书写, 录

telegraph 电报, photograph 照片

-hood 身分, 境遇, 状态

childhood 童年, neighbourhood 街道, livelihood 生计, likelihood 可能性

-ian 人

musician 音乐家, guardian 卫护者, Albanian 阿尔巴尼亚人, Christian 基督教徒, technician 技术员

•ice (抽象名词)

justice 正义, service 服务

-ing 属于,性质

shipping 运输, flooring 地板材料

-ism 主义, 教

communism 共产主义, socialism 社会主义, revisionism 修正主义, imperialism 帝国主义, feudalism 封建主义, colonialism 殖民主义, Buddhism 佛教

-ist 主义者,人

communist 共产主义者, imperialist 帝国主义者, artist 艺术家, specialist 专家

-ite 人

Moscovite 莫斯科人,Labourite 英国工党党员

-ity (抽象名词)

possibility 可能性, capability 能力, ability 能力, equality 平等-let (指小)

booklet 小册子, leaflet 传单, bracelet 手镯

-ling (指小,有时有经蔑的含义)

duckling 小鸭, sapling 树苗, hireling 被雇佣者, 走狗

-logy 学科

geology 地质学, psychology 心理学, philology 语言学

-man 人

Englishman 英国人, postman 邮递员, countryman 同胞(这些词亦可作为复合词看)

-ment 运动,结果

movement 运动, development 发展, judgement 判断, government 政府, 治理

-monger 贩

warmonger 战爭販子, fishmonger 鱼贩(这些词亦可作为复合词看)

-ness 状态, 性质

kindness 和善, carefulness 小心, correctness 正确, tiredness 疲倦

-or 人, 动作者

actor 男演员, visitor 访问者, editor 编辑, tractor 拖拉机

-ry, -ery 行为, 工作, 性质, 工作地点, 货物种类, 境遇等 bravery 勇敢, nursery 托儿所, cookery 烹调, drapery 布匹, 绸缎, slavery 奴役

-ship 状态,身份

friendship 友谊, comradeship 同志爱, sportsmanship 体育道 德, hardship 苦难, dictatorship 专政

-sion 动作, 状态

tension 紧张状态, revision 修订, expansion 扩张

-th 结果, 过程

truth 真理, growth 成长, depth 深度, death 死亡

-tion 动作, 状态

attention 注意, action 行动, revolution 革命

-tude (抽象名词)

aptitude 适应性, attitude 态度

-ty (抽象名词)

cruelty 残酷, specialty 专业, loyalty 忠实

-ure 结果, 动作

pleasure 快乐, pressure 压力, procedure 程序

-y, -ie 亲矖

Georgy 乔治的爱称, Johnny 约翰的爱称, lassie 女孩的爱称

11 形容词后缀

-able, -ible 能够

unforgettable 难忘的, tolerable 过得去的, responsible 负责的, favourable 有利的

-al 的

cultural 文化的, national 国家的

-an (地, 人) 的

Russian 俄罗斯的, 俄罗斯人的, American 美国的, 美国人的

-ant, -ent 的

important 重要的, excellent 卓越的

-ed 有, 像

talented 有才华的, dogged 顽强的

-en 的

golden 金色的, woolen 毛织的, wooden 木制的

ern (表示方向)

northern 北方的, eastern 东方的, southern 南方的, western 西方的

-ese, (地, 人)的

Chinese 中国的,中国人的, Japanese 日本的,日本人的-fold 倍

twofold 两倍, manifold 多种的, 数倍的

-ful 充满

careful 小心的, beautiful 美丽的, powerful 强有力的, useful 有用的(这些词亦可作为复合词看)

-ial 的

dictatorial 独裁的, industrial 工业的

-ian 的

proletarian 无产阶级的, Christian 基督教的

-ic, -ical 的

economic 经济的, political 政治的, grammatical 语法的, electric(al) 电的, ideological 思想意识的

-ish 属于, 稍微

bookish 书本气的, yellowish 稍黄的, selfish 自私的, British 英国的, childish 幼稚的

-ist, -istic 主义的, 的

imperialist 帝国主义的,communist 共产主义的,idealistic 唯 心主义的,materialistic 唯物主义的,artistic 艺术的

-ive 性, 倾向

active 积极的, protective 保护的, collective 集体的

-less 无

fearless 无所畏惧的,careless 不小心的, useless 无用的, meaningless 无意义的

-like 如

childlike 儿童般的 (亦可作为复合词看)

-ly 品质, 的

comradely 同志般的, friendly 友好的, weekly 每星期的, manly 文夫气的, daily 每天的

-most 最

foremost 最先的, 先进的

-ous 多

nervous 神经紧张的, dangerous 危险的, superstitious 迷信的, glorious 光荣的

-some 引起, 适于, 易于

troublesome 烦人的, tiresome (令人感到厌倦的), quarrelsome 爱争吵的

-ward 向

backward 落后的

-y 充满, 性质

rainy 雨的, snowy 雪的, handy 手巧的, 便于使用的, noisy 吵闹的, mighty 强有力的

12 动词后缀

-ate

isolate 使孤立, facilitate 使容易, 促进, consolidate 巩固

-en

deepen 加深, strengthen 加强, heighten 提高

-fy

simplify 简化, classify 分类

-ize, -ise

industrialize 工业化, revolutionize 革命化

13 副词后缀

-ly

carefully 小心地, beautifully 美丽地, quickly 迅速地 -ward, -wards 向

forward 向前,backward 向后,upwards 向上,downwards 向下

-wise 方式

likewise 同样地, otherwise 否则, 用另一种方式

三、转换

- **14 转换** 将一个单词由某一种词类转用为另一种词类,这就叫做转换,单词转换后的意义往往与未转换前的意义有密切的联系。
 - 15 名词转化为动词 如:

X-ray 由"爱克斯光"转义为"透视"

elbow 由"肘"转义为"用肘推挤"

back 由"背,后面"转义为"支持,后退"

stage 由"舞台"转义为"上演"

machine-gun 由"机关枪"转义为"用机关枪扫射"

lynch 由人名转义为"对...用私刑"

16 形容词转化为动词 如:

slow 由"慢"转义为"放慢"

better 由"较好"转义为"改善"

17 副词转化为动词 如:

down 由"向下"转义为"击落(敌机), 放下(工具, 即罢工)"

- 18 动词转化为名词 如:
 - to take a walk 散步
 - to have a look 看一看
 - to have a try 试一试
 - on the move 动个不停, 起动

take the lead 带头

19 形容词转化为名词 如:

the wounded 受伤的人们, the unemployed 失业的人们, the beautiful 美丽的东西, the blind 盲人们

- 20 其他词类转化为名词 如:
 - a must 必须做的事情, ups and downs 高低起伏, ins and outs 问题的底细